

# PROJECT MANUAL – SPECIFICATIONS VOLUME 2 OF 2 – TECHNICAL & CIVIL

## CLUBHOUSE RENOVATIONS PROJECTS – ARPA COMMUNITY FACILITIES – BOYS AND GIRLS CLUB OF LANCASTER

116 S. Water Street, Lancaster, PA 17603335 Dauphin Street, Lancaster, PA 17602229 W. Lemon Street, Lancaster, PA 17603

for

**BOYS AND GIRLS CLUB OF LANCASTER** 

September 30, 2024

### SECTION 02 41 19 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
- 2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
- 3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

### B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
- 2. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for cutting and patching procedures.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse .
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
  - A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
    - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
    - 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
    - 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
    - 5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- C. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - 1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's building manager's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  - 2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  - 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - 4. Use of elevator and stairs.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- D. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations. Comply with Section 01 32 33 "Photographic Documentation." Submit before Work begins.

### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
  - 1. Before selective demolition, Owner will remove the following items:
    - a. Loose equipment and furnishings.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

#### 1.9 COORDINATION

A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
- C. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.
- D. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.
- E. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs or video .
  - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 32 33 "Photographic Documentation."
  - 2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
  - 3. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

### 3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  - 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  - 4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  - 5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  - 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

### 3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - 1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  - Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  - 3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  - 4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  - 5. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 12 hours after flame-cutting operations.
  - 6. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  - 7. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  - 8. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  - 9. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  - 10. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
  - 1. Clean salvaged items.
  - 2. Store items in a secure area at the Project Site.
  - 3. Protect items from damage during storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
  - 1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
  - 2. Protect items from damage during storage.
  - 3. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Using power-driven saw, cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) at junctures with construction to remain. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.

- B. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, and then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- C. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using powerdriven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- D. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, and then break up and remove.
- E. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings." Do not use methods requiring solvent-based adhesive strippers.
- F. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than what can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight. See Section 07 53 23 ETHYLENE PROPYLENE DIENE MONOMER MEMBRANE ROOFING for new roofing requirements.
  - 1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
  - 2. Remove existing roofing system, refer to Roof Plan Drawings for details.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. and recycle or dispose of them according to Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
  - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  - 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  - 4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

#### 3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

### END OF SECTION 02 41 19

### SECTION 03 30 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Cast-in-place concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.
  - B. Related Requirements:
    - 1. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-ground.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.
- 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
  - A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
    - 1. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
      - a. Contractor's superintendent.
      - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
      - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
      - d. Concrete Subcontractor.
      - e. Special concrete finish Subcontractor.
    - 2. Review the following:
      - a. Special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
      - b. Construction joints, control joints, isolation joints, and joint-filler strips.
      - c. Semirigid joint fillers.
      - d. Vapor-retarder installation.
      - e. Anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances.
      - f. Cold and hot weather concreting procedures.
      - g. Concrete finishes and finishing.
      - h. Curing procedures.
      - i. Forms and form-removal limitations.
      - j. Shoring and reshoring procedures.
      - k. Methods for achieving specified floor and slab flatness and levelness.
      - I. Floor and slab flatness and levelness measurements.
      - m. Concrete repair procedures.
      - n. Concrete protection.
      - o. Initial curing and field curing of field test cylinders (ASTM C31/C31M.)

p. Protection of field cured field test cylinders.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each of the following.
  - 1. Portland cement.
  - 2. Fly ash.
  - 3. Slag cement.
  - 4. Aggregates.
  - 5. Admixtures:
    - a. Include limitations of use, including restrictions on cementitious materials, supplementary cementitious materials, air entrainment, aggregates, temperature at time of concrete placement, relative humidity at time of concrete placement, curing conditions, and use of other admixtures.
  - 6. Color pigments.
  - 7. Fiber reinforcement.
  - 8. Vapor retarders.
  - 9. Floor and slab treatments.
  - 10. Liquid floor treatments.
  - 11. Curing materials.
    - a. Include documentation from color pigment manufacturer, indicating that proposed methods of curing are recommended by color pigment manufacturer.
  - 12. Joint fillers.
  - 13. Repair materials.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:
  - 1. Mixture identification.
  - 2. Minimum 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Durability exposure class.
  - 4. Maximum w/cm.
  - 5. Calculated equilibrium unit weight, for lightweight concrete.
  - 6. Slump limit.
  - 7. Air content.
  - 8. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - 9. Steel-fiber reinforcement content.
  - 10. Synthetic micro-fiber content.
  - 11. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site if permitted.
  - 12. Include manufacturer's certification that permeability-reducing admixture is compatible with mix design.
  - 13. Include certification that dosage rate for permeability-reducing admixture matches dosage rate used in performance compliance test.
  - 14. Intended placement method.
  - 15. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
    - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.
- D. Samples: For manufacturer's standard colors for color pigment.

- E. Concrete Schedule: For each location of each Class of concrete indicated in "Concrete Mixtures" Article, including the following:
  - 1. Concrete Class designation.
  - 2. Location within Project.
  - 3. Exposure Class designation.
  - 4. Formed Surface Finish designation and final finish.
  - 5. Final finish for floors.
  - 6. Curing process.
  - 7. Floor treatment if any.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For the following:
  - 1. Installer: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
  - 2. Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer.
  - 3. Testing agency: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
- B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
  - 1. Cementitious materials.
  - 2. Admixtures.
  - 3. Fiber reinforcement.
  - 4. Curing compounds.
  - 5. Floor and slab treatments.
  - 6. Bonding agents.
  - 7. Adhesives.
  - 8. Vapor retarders.
  - 9. Semirigid joint filler.
  - 10. Joint-filler strips.
  - 11. Repair materials.
- C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
  - 1. Portland cement.
  - 2. Fly ash.
  - 3. Slag cement.
  - 4. Blended hydraulic cement.
  - 5. Silica fume.
  - 6. Performance-based hydraulic cement.
  - Aggregates.
  - 8. Admixtures:
    - a. Permeability-Reducing Admixture: Include independent test reports, indicating compliance with specified requirements, including dosage rate used in test.
- D. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements report, indicating compliance with specified tolerances.
- E. Research Reports:
  - 1. For concrete admixtures in accordance with ICC's Acceptance Criteria AC198.
  - 2. For sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier, showing compliance with ICC AC380.
- F. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each mix design.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer certified in accordance with NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Laboratory Testing Agency Qualifications: A testing agency qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated and employing an ACI-certified Concrete Quality Control Technical Manager.
  - 1. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.
- C. Field Quality Control Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
  - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as an ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, in accordance with ACI CPP 610.1 or an equivalent certification program.

### 1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on each concrete mixture.
  - 1. Include the following information in each test report:
    - a. Admixture dosage rates.
    - b. Slump.
    - c. Air content.
    - d. Seven-day compressive strength.
    - e. 28-day compressive strength.
    - f. Permeability.

### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 306.1 and as follows.
  - 1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 2. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
  - 3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - 4. Do not place concrete in contact with surfaces less than 35 deg F (1.7 deg C), other than reinforcing steel.
  - 5. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M), and as follows:
  - 1. Maintain concrete temperature at time of discharge to not exceed 95 deg F (35 deg C).

2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier material and accessories for sheet vapor retarder/ termite barrier and accessories that do not comply with requirements or that fail to resist penetration by termites within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL
  - A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS
  - A. Source Limitations:
    - 1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire Project.
    - 2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
    - 3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
    - 4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.
  - B. Cementitious Materials:
    - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I, gray.
    - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
    - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C989/C989M, Grade 100 or 120.
  - C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
    - 1. Alkali-Silica Reaction: Comply with one of the following:
      - a. Expansion Result of Aggregate: Not more than 0.04 percent at one-year when tested in accordance with ASTM C1293.
      - b. Expansion Results of Aggregate and Cementitious Materials in Combination: Not more than 0.10 percent at an age of 16 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C1567.
      - c. Alkali Content in Concrete: Not more than 4 lb./cu. yd. (2.37 kg/cu. m) for moderately reactive aggregate or 3 lb./cu. yd. (1.78 kg/cu. m) for highly reactive aggregate, when tested in accordance with ASTM C1293 and categorized in accordance with ASTM C1778, based on alkali content being calculated in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
    - 2. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch (19 mm) nominal.
    - 3. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
  - D. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C330/C330M, 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - E. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
  - F. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride in steel-reinforced concrete.

- 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
- 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
- 3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
- 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
- 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
- 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.
- 7. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C.
- 8. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-setaccelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
- 9. Permeability-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type S, hydrophilic, permeability-reducing crystalline admixture, capable of reducing water absorption of concrete exposed to hydrostatic pressure (PRAH).
  - a. Permeability: No leakage when tested in accordance with U.S. Army Corps of Engineers CRC C48 at a hydraulic pressure of 200 psi (1.28 MPa) for 14 days.
- G. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M, potable.

### 2.3 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Synthetic Monofilament Micro-Fiber: Monofilament polypropylene micro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C1116/C1116M, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm) long.
- B. Synthetic Fibrillated Micro-Fiber: Fibrillated polypropylene micro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C1116/C1116M, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm) long.
- C. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Synthetic macro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C1116/C1116M, Type III, 1 to 2-1/4 inches (25 to 57 mm) long.

#### 2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Sheet Vapor Retarder, Class A: ASTM E1745, Class A not less than 15 mils thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.

### 2.5 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete.

#### 2.6 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C171, polyethylene film burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Dissipating Curing Compound: ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B.
- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Nondissipating Curing Compound: ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.

- G. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Curing Compound: ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
- H. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming, Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C1315, Type 1, Class A.
- I. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C1315, Type 1, Class A.

### 2.7 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 in accordance with ASTM D2240.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade and class to suit requirements, and as follows:
  - 1. Types I and II, nonload bearing or Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

### 2.8 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch (3 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm) or coarse sand, as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi (29 MPa) at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch (6 mm) and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm) or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
  - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.

### 2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
  - 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.

- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
  - 2. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
  - 3. Silica Fume: 10 percent by mass.
  - 4. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans, Slag Cement, and Silica Fume: 50 percent by mass, with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.
  - 5. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans and Silica Fume: 35 percent by mass with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  - 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for parking structure slabs, and concrete with a w/cm below 0.50.
  - 4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
  - 5. Use permeability-reducing admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
- D. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

### 2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Normal-weight concrete used for footings.
  - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days.
  - 2. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
  - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - 4. Air Content: N/A
- B. Normal-weight concrete used for foundation walls and piers.
  - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days.
  - 2. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
  - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - 4. Air Content:
    - a. 5.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 3/4-inch (19mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
- C. Normal-weight concrete used for interior slabs-on-ground.
  - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days.
  - 2. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - 3. Air Content:
    - a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.
  - 4. Synthetic Micro-Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than a rate of [1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m).
  - 5. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than a rate of [4.0 lb/cu. yd. (2.4 kg/cu. m).
- D. Normal-weight concrete used for exterior retaining walls.

- 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days.
- 2. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
- 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
- 4. Air Content:
  - a. 5.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 3/4-inch (19mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.

#### 2.11 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M and furnish batch ticket information.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - 1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than five minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  - 2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
  - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  - 1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, and reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
  - 2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable to testing agency, including the following:
  - 1. Daily access to the Work.
  - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  - 3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test samples.
  - 4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
  - 1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303.
  - 3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.
  - 2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
  - 3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than 6 inches (150 mm), sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
  - 4. Lap joints 6 inches (150 mm) and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
  - 5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.
  - 6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
  - 7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.
    - a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by 6 inches (150 mm) on all sides, and sealing to vapor retarder.

### 3.5 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
  - 1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
  - 2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
    - a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  - 3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
  - 4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  - 5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  - 6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  - 7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamondrimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
  - 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

- Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
- 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints:
  - 1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.
  - 1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
  - 2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.
- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.
- C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
  - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301 (ACI 301M), but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
  - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- E. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
  - 1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
  - 2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  - 3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  - 4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
    - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
    - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches (150 mm) into preceding layer.
    - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
    - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  - 1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
  - 2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - 3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.

- 4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
- 5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
- 6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
- 7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
- 8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

### 3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:
  - 1. ACI 301 (ACI 301M) Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.
    - a. Patch voids larger than 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide or 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep.
    - b. Remove projections larger than 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    - c. Patch tie holes.
    - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 (ACI 117M) Class B.
    - e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- B. Related Unformed Surfaces:
  - 1. At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a color and texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
  - 2. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In:
  - 1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
  - 3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steeltroweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:
  - 1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
  - Construct concrete bases 4 inches (100 mm) high unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and extend base not less than 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, or unless required for seismic anchor support.
  - 3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days.
  - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
  - 6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices.
    - a. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    - b. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases.
    - c. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items.

- 1. Cast-in inserts and accessories, as shown on Drawings.
- 2. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

### 3.9 CONCRETE CURING

- A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
  - 1. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 306.1 for cold weather protection during curing.
  - 2. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M) for hot-weather protection during curing.
  - 3. Maintain moisture loss no more than 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h), calculated in accordance with ACI 305.1,) before and during finishing operations.
- B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 (ACI 308.1M) as follows:
  - 1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.
  - 2. Cure concrete containing color pigments in accordance with color pigment manufacturer's instructions.
  - 3. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
  - 4. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period, as follows:
    - a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.
    - b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    - c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    - d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
    - e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
      - 1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
      - 2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 (ACI 308.1M) as follows:
  - 1. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete.
  - 2. Interior Concrete Floors:
    - a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:
      - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
        - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12-inches (300-mm).
        - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
      - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
        - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
        - b) Cure for not less than seven days.

- 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
  - a) Water.
  - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- b. Floors to Receive Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments: Contractor has option of the following:
  - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches (300 mm).
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
    - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
  - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- c. Floors to Receive Curing Compound:
  - 1) Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
  - 3) Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.
  - 4) Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
- d. Floors to Receive Curing and Sealing Compound:
  - 1) Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
  - 3) Repeat process 24 hours later, and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.10 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to ACI 117 (ACI 117M).
- 3.11 APPLICATION OF LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS
  - A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.

- 2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than three days' old.
- 3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing.
- 4. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry.
- 5. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
- B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.12 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s).
  - 2. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches (50 mm) deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

### 3.13 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete:
  - 1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.
  - 2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any dimension to solid concrete.
    - a. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch (19 mm).
    - b. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface.
    - c. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent.
    - d. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
    - e. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement, so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color.
    - a. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching.
    - b. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that will affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:
  - 1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.

- a. Correct low and high areas.
- b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
- 2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
- 3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
- 4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar.
  - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
- 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
  - a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
- 6. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with repair topping.
  - a. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - b. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
- 7. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete.
  - a. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance all around.
  - b. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
  - c. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate.
  - d. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
  - e. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
- 8. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter with patching mortar.
  - a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
  - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
  - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
  - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
  - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

### 3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
  - 1. Testing agency shall be responsible for providing curing container for composite samples on Site and verifying that field-cured composite samples are cured in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M.

- 2. Testing agency shall immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
- 3. Testing agency shall report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.
  - a. Test reports shall include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C39/C39M, and ACI 301, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:
    - 1) Project name.
    - 2) Name of testing agency.
    - 3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
    - 4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
    - 5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
    - 6) Date and time of concrete placement.
    - 7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
    - 8) Date and time sample was obtained.
    - 9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
    - 10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
    - 11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
    - 12) Field test results.
    - 13) Information on storage and curing of samples before testing, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
    - 14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.
- C. Batch Tickets: For each load delivered, submit three copies of batch delivery ticket to testing agency, indicating quantity, mix identification, admixtures, design strength, aggregate size, design air content, design slump at time of batching, and amount of water that can be added at Project site.
- D. Inspections:
  - 1. Headed bolts and studs.
  - 2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  - 3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  - 4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  - 5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
  - 6. Batch Plant Inspections: On a random basis, as determined by Architect.
- E. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed in accordance with the following requirements:
  - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd. (4 cu. m), but less than 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m), plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.
    - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - 2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - 3. Slump Flow: ASTM C1611/C1611M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.

- 4. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C173/C173M volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete.
  - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
- 5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:
  - a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below or 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
- 6. Unit Weight: ASTM C567/C567M fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete.
  - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
- 7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:
  - a. Cast, initial cure, and field cure two sets of four standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
- 8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
  - a. Test one set of four field-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
  - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
- 9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
- 10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa) if specified compressive strength is 5000 psi (34.5 MPa), or no compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
- 11. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- 12. Additional Tests:
  - a. Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
  - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
    - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength shall be in accordance with ACI 301 ((ACI 301M),) section 1.6.6.3.
- 13. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- 14. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with ASTM E1155 (ASTM E1155M) within 48 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.

### 3.15 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Protect from petroleum stains.
  - 2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
  - 3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
  - 4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
  - 5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
  - 6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
  - 7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
  - 8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

### SECTION 03 54 16 - HYDRAULIC CEMENT UNDERLAYMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling underlayment for application below interior floor coverings.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Hydraulic cement underlayment.
  - 2. Primer
  - 3. Surface sealer.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans indicating substrates, locations, and average depths of underlayment based on survey of substrate conditions.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certifying that products are compatible.
- C. Minutes of pre-installation conference.

### 1.6 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installer who is approved by manufacturer for application of underlayment products required for this Project.
- B. Product Compatibility: Manufacturers of underlayment, sub-floor, and floor-covering systems certify in writing that products are compatible.
- C. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.

### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ventilation, ambient temperature and humidity, and other conditions affecting underlayment performance.
  - 1. Place hydraulic-cement-based underlayments only when ambient temperature and temperature of substrates are between 50 and 80 deg F.

### 1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate application of underlayment with requirements of floor-covering products and adhesives, to ensure compatibility of products.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HYDRAULIC-CEMENT-BASED UNDERLAYMENTS

- A. Underlayment: Hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in minimum uniform thickness of 1/4 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Ardex; eFeather Finish Self-Drying Cement Based Finish Underlayment
    - b. Custom Building Products: LevelQuik RS (Rapid Setting) Self Leveling Underlayment.
    - c. Euclid Chemical Company; EucioFloor SL160.
    - d. Uzin Utz North America, Inc.; UZIN NC 170 LevelStar.
    - e. Or equal as approved by the Professional.
  - 2. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement, or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined by ASTM C 219.
  - 3. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109.
  - 4. Underlayment Additive: Resilient-emulsion product of underlayment manufacturer, formulated for use with underlayment when applied to substrate and conditions indicated.
- B. Underlayment: Hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in minimum uniform thickness of 1/4 inch, installs from 1/8 inch to 1 ½ inch neat, and up to 5 inches with aggregate.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Ardex K 15, Finish Self-Drying Cement Based Finish Underlayment or equal.
      - i. Primer:
      - 1. Standard Absorbent Concrete: ARDEX P 51<sup>™</sup> Primer or equal.
      - 2. Extremely Absorbent Concrete: May require two applications of ARDEX P 51 to minimize the potential for pinholes forming in the ARDEX K 15.
      - 3. Wood: ARDEX P 82<sup>™</sup> Ultra Prime or equal.
      - 4. Metal: ARDEX EP 2000™ Substrate Preparation Epoxy Primer or equal.
      - 5. Other Non-Porous Substrates (burnished concrete, terrazzo, well-bonded ceramic, quarry and porcelain tiles, epoxy coating systems and non-water-soluble adhesive

residue on concrete and concrete treated with silicate compounds): ARDEX P 82 Ultra Prime ii.

- ii. Performance and Physical Properties: Meet or exceed the following values for material cured at 73° F+/-3°F (23° C+/-3°C) and 50% +/-5% relative humidity:
  - 1. Application: Barrel Mix or Pump.
  - 2. Flow Time: 10 minutes.
  - 3. Walkable: 2 to 3 hours.
  - 4. Compressive Strength: 5,500 psi (385 kg/cm2 ) at 28 days, ASTM C109M .
  - 5. Flexural Strength: 1,200 psi (84 kg/cm2 ) at 28 days, ASTM C348 6. VOC: 0.
- C. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm); or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - 1. Provide aggregate for areas of infill over 1½" thick and when recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for underlayment thickness required.
- D. Water: Potable and at a temperature of not more than 70 deg F (21 deg C).
- E. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended in writing for substrate, conditions, and application indicated.
  - 1. Primer shall have a VOC content of 200 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D.
  - 2. Primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Surface Sealer: Designed to reduce porosity as recommended by manufacturer for type of floor covering to be applied to underlayment.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare and clean substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Treat nonmoving substrate cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent cracks from telegraphing (reflecting) through underlayment.
  - 2. Fill substrate voids to prevent underlayment from leaking.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond.
  - 1. Moisture Testing: Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates do not exceed a maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.

- C. Nonporous Substrates: For ceramic tile, quarry tile, and terrazzo substrates, remove waxes, sealants, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond, and prepare surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Adhesion Tests: After substrate preparation, test substrate for adhesion with underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. General: Mix and apply underlayment components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Close areas to traffic during underlayment application and for time period after application recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 2. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum underlayment-to-substrate and intercoat adhesion.
  - 3. At substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints, allow joint of same width to continue through underlayment.
- B. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- C. Apply underlayment to produce uniform, level surface.
  - 1. Apply a final layer without aggregate to product surface.
  - 2. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
- D. Cure underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
- E. Do not install floor coverings over underlayment until after time period recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
- F. Apply surface sealer at rate recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Remove and replace underlayment areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate, including areas that emit a "hollow" sound when tapped.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect underlayment from concentrated and rolling loads for remainder of construction period.

### END OF SECTION 03 54 16

### SECTION 04 20 00 - UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Concrete masonry units.
  - 2. Mortar and grout.
  - 3. Steel reinforcing bars.
  - 4. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
  - 5. Ties and anchors.
  - 6. Embedded flashing.
  - 7. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
    - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
    - 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315.
    - 3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
  - 1. Submittal is for information only. Receipt of list does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
  - 1. Masonry units.

- a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
- b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
- c. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
- 2. Integral water repellent used in CMUs.
- 3. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
- 4. Mortar admixtures.
- 5. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
- 6. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
- 7. Reinforcing bars.
- 8. Joint reinforcement.
- 9. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- D. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
  - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- E. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- F. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1093 for testing indicated.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
  - B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
  - C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
  - D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
  - E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides of walls and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.

- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
  - 1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
  - 2. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C1314.

### 2.3 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
  1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.4 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  - 2. Provide bullnose units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent for exposed units.
  - Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested according to ASTM E514/E514M as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, shall show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) ACM Chemistries.

- 2) Euclid Chemical Company (The); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
- 3) GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
- 4) Master Builders Solutions; brand of MBCC Group.
- C. CMUs: ASTM C90.
  - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2800 psi (19.3 MPa).
  - 2. Density Classification: Lightweight unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch (10 mm) less than nominal dimensions.

### 2.5 CONCRETE AND MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide one of the following:
- B. Concrete Lintels: ASTM C1623, matching CMUs in color, texture, and density classification; and with reinforcing bars indicated. Provide lintels with net-area compressive strength not less than that of CMUs.
- C. Concrete Lintels: Precast or formed-in-place concrete lintels complying with requirements in Section 03 20 00 "Concrete Reinforcing," and with reinforcing bars indicated.
- D. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

### 2.6 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
  1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
  - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  - 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
  - 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  - 4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- E. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.
- F. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ACM Chemistries.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
    - c. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
    - d. Master Builders Solutions; brand of MBCC Group.
- G. Water: Potable.
- 2.7 REINFORCEMENT
  - A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, Grade 60 (Grade 420).

- B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A951/A951M.
  - 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
  - 2. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.187-inch(4.76-mm) diameter.
  - 3. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.187-inch(4.76-mm) diameter.
  - 4. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
  - 5. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet (3 m), with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- D. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder type with single pair of side rods.

### 2.8 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 coating.
  - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
  - 3. Stainless Steel Wire: ASTM A580/A580M, Type 304.
  - 4. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
  - 5. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
  - 6. Stainless Steel Bars: ASTM A276 or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- C. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) wide.
  - 1. Z-shaped ties with ends bent 90 degrees to provide hooks not less than 2 inches (50 mm) long may be used for masonry constructed from solid units.
  - 2. Where wythes do not align are of different materials, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  - 3. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch-(4.76-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- D. Partition Top Anchors: 0.105-inch- (2.66-mm-) thick metal plate with a 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter metal rod 6 inches (152 mm) long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

### 2.9 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
  - 2. Copper: ASTM B370, Temper H00, cold-rolled copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. (4.9-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0216 inch (0.55 mm) thick or ASTM B370, Temper H01, high-yield copper sheet, 12-oz./sq. ft. (3.7-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0162 inch (0.41 mm) thick.
  - 3. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches (2400 mm) long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet (3.7 m). Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
  - 4. Fabricate metal drip edges and sealant stops for ribbed metal flashing from plain metal flashing of same metal as ribbed flashing and extending at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall with hemmed inner edge to receive ribbed flashing and form a hooked seam. Form hem on upper surface of metal so that completed seam sheds water.
  - 5. Fabricate metal drip edges from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
  - 6. Fabricate metal sealant stops from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for 3/4 inch (19 mm) and down into joint 1/4 inch (6 mm) to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
  - 7. Fabricate metal expansion-joint strips from stainless steel to shapes indicated.
  - 8. Solder metal items at corners.

a.

- B. Flexible Flashing: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Copper-Laminated Flashing: 7-oz./sq. ft.(2-kg/sq. m) copper sheet bonded between two layers of polymer fabric. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
    - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Copper Sealtite 2000.
      - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; Copper Fabric Flashing NA .
      - 3) Wire-Bond; Copper Seal Flashing #4140.
      - 4) York Manufacturing, Inc; Multi-Flash 500.
  - 2. Stainless Steel Flashing: Stainless Steel core flexible flashing with drainage fabric. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry. Stainless steel drip-edge not required if stainless steel flashing is installed to face of veneer.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) York Flash Vent Stainless Steel or approved equal.
- C. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
  - 2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.
  - 3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge.
  - 4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use metal flashing or flexible flashing.
- D. Single-Wythe CMU Flashing System: System of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from UV-resistant, high-density polyethylene. Cell flashing pans have integral weep spouts designed to be built into mortar bed joints and that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.
- E. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

#### 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Mastic/sealant: Product to be compatible with system and as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Characteristics:
    - a. Type: One part 100% solids, solvent-free formulated silyl-terminated polyether (STPE), ASTM C920-11, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50.
- E. Outside corner and inside corner material; manufacturer's standard available units using:
  1. Stainless steel: 26-gauge stainless steel.
- F. End dam: Product may be folded in line with the flashing material or utilize preformed end dams by manufacturer using:
  - 1. Stainless steel: 26-gauge stainless steel
- G. Splice material: Standard self-adhered metal material; material matching system; manufacturer's standard lap piece and polyether sealant as a splice.

### 2.11 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
  - 1. 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.b. EaCo Chem, Inc.c. ProSoCo, Inc.

### 2.12 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, waterrepellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime mortar.
  - 4. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
  - 1. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
  - 2. For interior load-bearing walls; for interior nonload-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
  - 3. For interior nonload-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
- D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.
  - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  - 2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches(200 to 280 mm) as measured according to ASTM C143/C143M.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
  - 2. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  - 3. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
  - A. Thickness: Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
  - B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.

# 3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
  - 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch (12 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch (12 mm).
  - 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) in a story height or 1/2 inch (12 mm) total.
- B. Lines and Levels:
  - 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
  - 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
  - 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
  - 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
  - 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
  - 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet ((6 mm in 3 m),) or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
  - 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.
- C. Joints:
  - 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm), with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch (12 mm).
  - 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch (9 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm). Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch(3 mm)
  - 5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) from one masonry unit to the next.

# 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond ; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- E. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- G. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  - Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches(1200 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Wedge nonload-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
  - 4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 07 84 43 "Joint Firestopping."

# 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay CMUs as follows:
  - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  - 2. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  - 3. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
  - 4. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For glazed masonry units, use a nonmetallic jointer 3/4 inch (19 mm) or more in width.

# 3.6 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
  - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. in parapet walls.
  - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

# 3.7 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
  - 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout, and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
  - 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
  - 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar, or rake out joint for application of sealant.
  - 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints, and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch(10 mm).
  - 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

# 3.8 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide concrete lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches (305 mm) for brick-size units and 24 inches (610 mm) for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches (200 mm) at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

# 3.9 FLASHING

- A. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
- B. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.
- C. Fold ends of flashing at end of opening to form dam; seal with sealant or utilize preformed end dams from manufacturer.
- D. Inside corners: Make in manufacturers accepted manner using corner and splice material or utilize preformed corners from manufacturer.
- E. Outside corners: Make in manufacturers accepted manner using corner and splice material or utilize preformed corners from manufacturer.

# 3.10 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
  - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.

- 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and that of other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches(1520 mm).

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Special inspections according to Level B in TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.
  - Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
    Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and
    - locations of reinforcement.
  - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C140 for compressive strength.
- E. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780.
- F. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- G. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C1019.
- H. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, according to ASTM C1314 at 7 days and at 28 days.
- 3.12 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING
  - A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
  - B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
  - C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
  - D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
    - Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
      Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
    - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
    - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
    - 5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.

- 6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.
- 7. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 8. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.
- 9. Clean limestone units to comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

# 3.13 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches (100 mm) in each dimension.
  - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
  - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches (450 mm) of finished grade.
- C. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.
- D. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

#### END OF SECTION 04 20 00

# SECTION 05 52 13 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel pipe and tube railings.

### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
  - 2. Railing brackets.
  - 3. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
  - 1. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters.
  - 2. Fittings and brackets.
  - 3. Assembled Sample of railing system, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Sample need not be full height.
    - a. Show method of connecting and finishing members at intersections.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Product Test Reports: For pipe and tube railings, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.
- E. Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including structural analysis, preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
  - 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- D. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Steel Pipe and Tube Railings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Julius Blum & Co., Inc.

- b. Pisor Industries, Inc.
- c. Wagner, R & B, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.

# 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
    - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
    - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - 2. Infill of Guards:
    - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
    - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C, material surfaces).

#### 2.3 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage and that provides 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

# 2.4 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed).
- B. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
- C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, square pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5 mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).

#### 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
  - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Components: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.
  - 3. Uncoated Steel Components: Plated-steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating where concealed; Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners where exposed.
  - 4. Dissimilar Metals: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
  - 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
- E. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching railings to other work unless otherwise indicated or (exposed fasteners are the standard fastening method for railings indicated).
  - 1. Provide tamper-resistant square or hex socket flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

#### 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- E. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting," Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."
- F. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting.

- G. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- H. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
  - 1. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

# 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Form Changes in Direction as Follows:
  - 1. By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
  - 2. By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.
  - 3. By bending to smallest radius that will not result in distortion of railing member.
- J. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- K. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- L. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.

- M. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- N. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- O. Make up wire-rope assemblies in the shop to field-measured dimensions with fittings machine swaged. Minimize amount of turnbuckle take-up used for dimensional adjustment so maximum amount is available for tensioning wire ropes. Tag wire-rope assemblies and fittings to identify installation locations and orientations for coordinated installation.
- P. For railing posts set in concrete, provide steel sleeves not less than 6 inches (150 mm) long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
- Q. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

# 2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

# 2.9 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- B. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
  - 1. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.
- C. Field-Painted Finish
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- D. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
  - 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
  - 3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (6 mm in 3.5 m).
- C. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
- D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

### 3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- B. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches (50 mm) beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches (150 mm) of post.

# 3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

A. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material.
- C. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
  - 1. For stainless steel railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.

### 3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends.
- B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends.
- C. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- D. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
  - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
  - 3. For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

# 3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

# 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

# END OF SECTION 05 52 13

# SECTION 06 10 53 - MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  - 2. Wood furring and grounds.
  - 3. Plywood backing panels.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater size but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) size in least dimension Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

# 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - 3. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  - 1. Preservative-treated wood.
  - 2. Power-driven fasteners.
  - 3. Post-installed anchors.
  - 4. Metal framing anchors.
  - 5. Expansion Anchors.
  - 6. Powder-actuated fasteners.

# 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  - 4. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness unless otherwise indicated.

# 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
  - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry unless otherwise indicated.

# 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
  - 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 4. Cants.

- 5. Furring.
- 6. Grounds.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any of the following species:
  - 1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
  - 2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
  - 3. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
  - 4. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
  - 5. Northern species; NLGA.
- C. Concealed Boards: 15 percent maximum moisture content of any of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
  - 2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 3. Eastern softwoods, No. 2 Common grade; NELMA.
  - 4. Northern species, No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
- D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- F. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

### 2.4 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, A-C, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal thickness.
  - 1. Plywood shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

# 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Screws for Fastening to Metal Framing: ASTM C954, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- D. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- E. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 ICC-ES AC58 ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.

- 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
- 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F738M and ASTM F836M, Grade A1 or A4).
- F. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- G. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
- H. Bolts: Steel Bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

# 2.6 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
  - 2. KC Metals Products, Inc.
  - 3. Phoenix Metal Products, Inc.
  - 4. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - 5. USP Structural Connectors
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G60 (Z180) coating designation.
  - 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 (Z550) coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) thick.
  - 1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.
- D. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
  - 1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

# 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
  - 1. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch (0.6 mm).

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.
- D. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
- G. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
  - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness.
- H. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- I. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- J. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- K. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
  - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- L. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILER

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

# 3.3 INSTALLATION OF WOOD FURRING

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-63-mm actual-) size furring vertically at [24 inches (610 mm)] 600 mm o.c.
- C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board : Install 1-by-2-inch nominal- (19-by-38-mm actual-) size furring vertically at [16 inches (406 mm)] 400 mm o.c.

# 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect miscellaneous rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, miscellaneous rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

# END OF SECTION 06 10 53

# SECTION 07 11 13 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cold-applied, cut-back-asphalt dampproofing.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for bituminous vapor retarders under slabs-on-grade.
  - 2. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for mortar parge coat on masonry surfaces.

# 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

# 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide protection course drainage panels and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction unless otherwise indicated.

# 2.3 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Henry Company; a Carlisle company.
  - 2. Karnak Corporation.
  - 3. W. R. Meadows, Inc.
- B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 4586/D 4586M, Type I, Class 1, fibered.
- C. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 4479/D 4479M, Type I, fibered.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.
- B. Cut-Back-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41/D 41M.
- C. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, except diluted with water as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- D. Asphalt-Coated Glass Fabric: ASTM D 1668/D 1668M, Type I.
- E. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.
- F. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners.
  - 1. Thickness: Nominal 1/8 inch(3 mm).
  - 2. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer for protection course type.
- G. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, maximum surface moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dustfree, and dry substrates for dampproofing application.
- B. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.
- C. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any.
- D. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections ; cover with asphalt-coated glass fabric.

#### 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
  - 2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.

- B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) over outside face of footing.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing 12 inches (300 mm) onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
  - Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where indicated as "reinforced," by embedding an 8-inch- (200-mm-) wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.
- C. Where dampproofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
  - 2. Lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto shelf angles supporting veneer.
- D. Where dampproofing interior face of above-grade, exterior concrete and masonry single-wythe masonry walls, continue dampproofing through intersecting walls by keeping vertical mortar joints at intersection temporarily open or by dampproofing wall before constructing intersecting walls.

# 3.4 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft.(0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft.(0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat .
- B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft.(0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft.(0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat .

# 3.5 PROTECTION COURSE INSTALLATION

- A. Install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.
  - 1. Install protection course on same day of dampproofing installation (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.

# 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation drainage panels from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where panels are subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
- B. Correct dampproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, and reapply dampproofing.

# END OF SECTION 07 11 13

### SECTION 07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
    - 2. Mineral-wool blanket insulation.
  - B. Related Requirements:
    - 1. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for insulation installed in masonry cells.
    - 2. Section 07 53 23 Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EDPM) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of EPDM roof construction.
    - 3. Section 09 29 00 "Gypsum Board" for sound attenuation blanket used as acoustic insulation.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
  - 2. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
  - 3. Mineral-wool blanket insulation.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Installer's Certification: Listing type, manufacturer, and R-value of insulation installed in each element of the building thermal envelope.
  - B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  - C. Research Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

# 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
  - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
  - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
  - 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation, Type IV: ASTM C578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength; unfaced.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
    - c. Kingspan Insulation LLC.
    - d. Owens Corning.
    - e. The Dow Chemical Company.
    - f. Insulfoam
  - 2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 4. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
  - 5. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches (305 mm) and wider in width.
- B. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation, Type IV, Drainage Panels: ASTM C578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
    - c. Owens Corning.
    - d. The Dow Chemical Company.
  - 2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches (305 mm) and wider in width.

# 2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type I; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches (305 mm) and wider in width.
- B. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Kraft Faced: ASTM C665, Type II (nonreflective faced), Class C (faced surface not rated for flame propagation); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier).
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
- b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
- c. Knauf Insulation.
- d. Owens Corning.
- 2. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches (305 mm) and wider in width.
- C. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Reinforced-Foil Face: ASTM C665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches (305 mm) and wider in width.
- D. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Foil Faced: ASTM C665, Type III (reflective faced), Class B (faced surface with a flame-propagation resistance of 0.12 W/sq. cm); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches (305 mm) and wider in width.

## 2.3 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Owens Corning.
    - c. ROCKWOOL.
  - 2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches (305 mm) and wider in width.
- B. Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation, Reinforced-Foil Faced: ASTM C665, Type III (reflective faced); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Owens Corning.

- 2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- 3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- 4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches (305 mm) and wider in width.

# 2.4 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.
    - b. Gemco.
  - 2. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.762 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
  - 3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- B. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick galvanizedsteel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) square or in diameter.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.
    - b. Gemco.
  - 2. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
    - a. Crawl spaces.
    - b. Ceiling plenums.
    - c. Attic spaces.
- C. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space of 2 inches (50 mm) between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Gemco.
- D. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates without damaging insulation, fasteners, or substrates.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.
    - b. Gemco.

# 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smokedeveloped indexes of 5, per ASTM E84.

- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.
- C. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
  - A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
  - B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
  - C. Install insulation with manufacturer's R-value label exposed after insulation is installed.
  - D. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
  - E. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) below exterior grade line.
- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) in from exterior walls.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.
- B. Anchor Installation: Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
  - 1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application.
  - 3. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated on Drawings between concrete substrate and insulation.

- 4. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation.
- 5. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.
- C. Adhesive Installation: Install with adhesive or press into tacky waterproofing or dampproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.

# 3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  - 3. Maintain 3-inch (76-mm) clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  - 4. Attics: Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
  - 5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches (2438 mm), support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
  - 6. For wood-framed construction, install blankets according to ASTM C1320 and as follows:
    - a. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
  - 7. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
    - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward as indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward areas of high humidity .
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m).
  - 2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

# 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.
- B. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

# END OF SECTION 07 21 00

# SECTION 07 53 23 - ETHYLENE PROPYLENE DIENE MONOMER (EPDM) MEMBRANE ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Adhered EPDM membrane roofing system.
  - 2. Roof insulation.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
  - 2. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashings and counter flashings.
  - 3. Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for roof drains.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Roofing Terminology: Refer to the following publications for definitions of roofing work related terms used in this Section:
  - 1. ASTM D 1079 "Standard Terminology Relating to Roofing and Waterproofing."
  - 2. Glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
  - 3. Roof Consultants Institute "Glossary of Roofing Terms."
  - 4. Single Ply Roofing Industry (SPRI)
  - 5. International Building Code (IBC)
  - 6. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE-7) Minimum Design Loads for Buildings & Other Structures
  - 7. Sheet Metal Terminology and Techniques: SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."

### 1.4 DESIGN CRITERIA

- A. General: Installed roofing membrane systems shall remain watertight; and resist specified wind uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Installer shall comply with current code requirements based on authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Wind Uplift Performance: Roofing system shall meet the intent of systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist wind uplift pressure calculated in accordance with ASCE 7-16.
- E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide roofing materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated as determined by testing identical products per test method below by UL 790 or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

# 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets for each product to be provided.
- B. Detail Drawings: Provide roofing system plans, elevations, sections, details, and details of attachment to other Work, including:
  - 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - 3. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
  - 4. Insulation fastening patterns.
- C. Verification Samples: Provide for each product specified.
- D. Installer Certificates: confirmation that installer is approved, authorized, or licensed by manufacture to install roofing system.
- E. Maintenance Data: Refer to Johns Manville's latest published documents on www.JM.com.
- F. Guarantees: Provide manufacturer's current guarantee specimen.
- G. Roofing sub-contractor shall provide a copy of the final System Assembly Letter issued by Johns Manville Roofing Systems indicating that the products and system to be installed shall be eligible to receive the specified manufacturer's guarantee when installed by a certified JM contractor in accordance with our application requirements, inspected and approved by a JM Technical Representative.
- H. Prior to roofing system installation, roofing sub-contractor shall provide a copy of the Guarantee Application Confirmation document issued by Johns Manville Roofing Systems indicating that the project has been reviewed for eligibility to receive the specified guarantee and registered.

# 1.6 QAULITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product who is eligible to receive the specified manufacturer's guarantee.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Qualified domestic U.S. owned and based manufacturer that has UL listing or accredited testing agency listing for roofing system identical to that used for this project.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Independent testing agency with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329.
- D. Test Reports:
  - 1. Roof drain and leader test or submit plumber's verification, if required
  - 2. Core cut, if requested.
  - 3. Roof deck fastener pullout test, if required
  - 4. Bonded pull test, if required.
- E. Moisture Survey, if required
  - 1. Submit prior to installation, results of a non-destructive moisture test of roof system completed by approved third party. Utilize one of the approved methods:
    - a. Infrared Thermography
    - b. Nuclear Backscatter

- F. Source Limitations: Obtain all components from the single source roofing system manufacturer guaranteeing the roofing system. All products used in the system shall be labeled by the single source roofing system manufacturer issuing the guarantee.
- G. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Roofing materials shall comply with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated as determined by testing identical products per test method below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

# 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when current and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and guarantee requirements.

# 1.9 GAURANTEES

- A. Provide manufacturer's system guarantee equal to Johns Manville's Peak Advantage No Dollar Limit Roofing System Guarantee.
  - 1. Single-source special guarantee includes roofing membrane, base flashings, roofing membrane accessories, roof insulation, fasteners, adhesives, walkway products, manufacturer's edge metal products, and other approved single-source components of roofing system marketed by the manufacturer.
  - 2. Guarantee Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 3. Contractor is required to list Marotta/Main Architects as the Specifier/Consultant of record in the appropriate fields ("Specifier Account") when applying for the manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Installer's Guarantee: Submit roofing Installer's guarantee, including all components of roofing system for the following guarantee period:
  - 1. Guarantee Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Existing Guarantees: Guarantees on existing building elements should not be affected by scope of work.
  - 1. Installer is responsible for coordinating with building owner's representative to verify compliance.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ETHYLENE PROPYLENE DIENE MONOMER ROOFING MEMBRANE - EPDM

- A. Non-reinforced uniform, flexible sheet made from Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer, ASTM D 4637, Type I. Basis of design: JM EPDM NR FIT SYSTEMS
  - 1. Thickness (minimum): 60 mils
  - 2. Exposed Face Color: Black
- B. Factory Inseam Tape: 4 inch (101.6 mm) wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film.

# 2.2 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with membrane roofing.
  - 1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall meet VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's internally reinforced or scrim reinforced. Basis of design: JM EPDM Peel & Stick Flashing
- C. Primer Material: Manufacturer's standard synthetic-rubber polymer primer. Basis of design: JM EPDM Tape Primer Plus (Low VOC)
- D. Liquid Applied Flashing: Manufacturer's single ply liquid and fabric reinforced flashing system created with a fleece polyester scrim and a two-component polyurethane-based liquid applied flashing material, consisting of a liquid resin and a curing agent. Basis of design: JM SP Liquid Flashing Resin, JM SP Liquid Scrim
- E. Liquid Applied Flashing Primer: Manufacturer's single ply liquid flashing primer. Basis of design: JM Liquid Applied Flashing Primers
- F. Seaming Material: Manufacturer's standard 3-inch (76.2 mm) wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film. Basis of design: JM EPDM Seam Tape Plus
- G. Sealing Strip: Manufacturer's standard minimum per manufacturer written instructions, 45 mil (1.14 mm) thick minimum cured EPDM with factory-laminated, self-adhering seam tape. Basis of design: JM EPDM Peel & Stick Sealing Strip
- H. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard solvent-based bonding adhesive for membrane. Basis of design: JM LVOC Membrane Adhesive
  - 1. Serviceable Installation Ambient Air Temperature: 25°F and rising
- I. Flashing Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard solvent-based bonding adhesive for base flashings. Basis of design: JM LVOC Membrane Adhesive
  - 1. Serviceable Installation Ambient Air Temperature: 25°F and rising
- J. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.
- K. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, with anchors. Basis of design: JM Termination Systems
- L. Membrane Battens: Manufacturer's standard polymer or aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated steel sheet, prepunched. Basis of design: JM Membrane Battens

- M. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer. Basis of design: JM High Load Fasteners (#15)
- N. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide all accessories to meet the roofing manufacturer's guarantee requirements.

# 2.3 WALKWAYS

A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads sourced from membrane roofing system manufacturer. Basis of design: JM EPDM Peel & Stick Walkpads.

#### 2.4 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards that comply with requirements and referenced standards, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes and of thicknesses indicated.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 (20 psi) Basis of design: JM ENRGY 3®
  - 1. Provide insulation package with minimum R Value: 30
  - 2. Provide insulation package in multiple layers when applicable.
  - 3. Minimum Long-Term Thermal Resistance (LTTR): 5.7 per inch.
    - a. Determined in accordance with CAN/ULC S770 at 75°F (24°C).

## 2.5 TAPERED INSULATION

A. Tapered Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 (20 psi), provide factory-tapered insulation boards with slopes as indicated on drawing. Basis of design: JM Tapered ENRGY 3®.

#### 2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatible with membrane roofing.
- B. Provide saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.
- C. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and furnished by roofing system manufacturer. Basis of design: JM UltraFast® Fasteners (#12)
- D. Wood Nailer Strips: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry."

### 2.7 EDGE METAL COMPONENTS

A. Coping System: Manufacturer's factory fabricated .040 aluminum coping with two coat Kynar finish consisting of a base piece and a snap-on cap. Provide product manufactured and marketed by single-source membrane supplier that is included in the No Dollar Limit guarantee. Basis of design: JM Presto Lock Coping.

- B. Fascia System: Manufacturer's factory fabricated.040 aluminum fascia with two coat Kynar finish consisting of a base piece and a snap-on cover. Provide product manufactured and marketed by single-source membrane supplier that is included in the No Dollar Limit guarantee. Basis of design: JM Presto-Tite<sup>™</sup> Fascia.
- C. Roof Edge Drainage Systems: Gutter Systems: Manufactured in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet with 0.100-inch mill aluminum internal Gutter Hangers, 24 inches on center, and 2 inch wide formed external wind straps 6'-0" on center. Basis of design: JM Industrial Gutter System.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and set and braced and that roof drains are securely clamped in place.
  - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
- B. Steel Decks:
  - 1. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking."
  - 2. Verify that decking is visibly dry and free of moisture.
  - 3. Verify that the decking is smooth and free of large cracks, holes or sharp changes in elevation of the surface.
  - 4. When applicable perform pull test with the specific fastener being used on the project to confirm the fastener resistance meets the requirements for that particular system.
- C. Ensure general rigidity and proper slope for drainage.
- D. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
- E. Unacceptable panels should be brought to the attention of the General Contractor and Project Owner's Representative and shall be corrected prior to installation of roofing system.

# 3.2 RE-ROOF PREPARATION

- A. Remove all roofing membrane, surfacing, coverboards, insulation, fasteners, asphalt, pitch, adhesives, etc.
  - 1. Remove an area no larger than can be re-roofed in one day.
- B. Tear out all base flashings, counterflashings, pitch pans, pipe flashings, vents, sumps and like components necessary for application of new membrane.
- C. Remove abandoned equipment curbs, skylights, smoke hatches, and penetrations.
  - 1. Install decking to match existing as directed by Owner's Representative.
- D. Raise (disconnect by licensed craftsmen, if necessary) all HVAC units and other equipment supported by curbs to conform with the following:

- 1. Modify curbs as required to provide a minimum 8" base flashing height measured from the surface of the new membrane to the top of the flashing membrane.
- 2. Secure flashing and install new metal counterflashing prior to re-installation of unit.
- 3. Perimeter nailers shall be elevated to match the elevation of new roof insulation.
- E. Immediately remove all debris from roof surface. The demolished roof system may not be stored on the roof surface.

# 3.3 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installation of roof system components so insulation are not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installation of roof insulation
- C. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- D. Install insulation boards with long joints in a continuous straight line. Joints should be staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends per manufacturer's written instructions. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) with like material.
- E. Install 2 or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (152.4 mm) in each direction.
- F. Trim surface of insulation boards where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
- G. If required, install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
- H. Loose Laid Insulation with Top Insulation Layer Mechanically Fastened: Loose lay insulation with staggered joints and secure top layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners designed and sized for fastening specified board-type to deck type.
  - 1. Fasten top layer to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

# 3.4 ROOFING MEMBRANE INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing membrane in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, applicable recommendations of the roofing manufacturer and requirements in this Section.
- B. Where roof slope exceeds 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24), contact the membrane manufacturer for installation instructions regarding installation direction.
- C. Cooperate with testing and inspecting agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
- D. Coordinate installing roofing system so insulation and other components of the roofing membrane system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is imminent.
  - 1. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed roofing membrane sheets and insulation.
  - 2. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
  - 3. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

# 3.5 ADHERED ROOFING MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roofing membrane over area to receive roofing in accordance with membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Unroll roofing membrane and allow to relax before installing.
  - 2. Install sheet in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Accurately align roofing membrane and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Apply solvent-based bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of roofing membrane at rate required by manufacturer. Follow all manufacturer recommendations for proper application of membrane, Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of roofing membrane.
- D. Mechanically fasten roofing membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- E. Apply roofing membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- F. Tape to Standard Sheet Installation: Align membrane for appropriate overlap, clean and prime non-taped face of splice area, remove release liners and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roofing membranes according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- G. Spread sealant or mastic bead over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal roofing membrane in place with clamping ring.

# 3.6 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates in accordance with membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply solvent-based bonding adhesive at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply bonding adhesive to seam area of flashing.
- C. Apply single ply liquid applied flashing system per manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- E. Clean seam areas and overlap and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive.
- F. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

# 3.7 EDGE METAL INSTALLATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions under which sheet metal flashing and trim are to be installed and verify that work may properly commence. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Provide edge details as indicated on the Drawings. Install in accordance with the membrane manufacturer's requirements and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
- C. Join individual sections in accordance with the membrane manufacturer's requirements and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."

# 3.8 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

MAROTTA / MAIN ARCHITECTS

#### ETHYLENE PROPYLENE DIENE MONOMER (EPDM) MEMBRANE ROOFING
A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

# 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner or designated representative will provide on-site observation and inspection during installation.
- B. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical representative to inspect roofing installation on completion and submit report to owner or designated representative.
- D. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where test results or inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

# 3.10 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

# END OF SECTION 07 53 23

# SECTION 07 62 00 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
  - 2. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
  - 3. Manufactured reglets and counterflashings.
  - 4. Miscellaneous sheet metal flashing and trim.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for installing through-wall flashings, reglets in masonry construction.
  - 2. Section 06 10 53 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

# 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - a. Indicate details meet requirements of "SMACNA", "NRCA", and "FMG".
- 2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
- 3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
- 4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
- 5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
- 6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
- 7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
- 8. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
- 9. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings as applicable.
- 10. Include details of special conditions.
- 11. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
- 12. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is SPRI ES-1 tested and FM Approvals approved.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

# 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Warranties: Manufacturer's executed warranty documents. Submit prior to acceptance of Work.

### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
  - 1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are FM Approvals approved, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.

# 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.

B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Refer to warranty requirements of Division 07 Sections "Hot-Applied Built-Up Asphalt Roofing", and "Standing Seam Sheet Metal Roofing" for terms and conditions of warranties covering work of this Section.
- B. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Flashings and Fastening: Comply with requirements of Division 07 roofing sections. Provide base flashings, perimeter flashings, detail flashings and component materials and installation techniques that comply with requirements and recommendations of the following:
  - 1. FM Global 1-49: "Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet for Perimeter Flashings."
  - 2. FM Global 1-29: "Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet for Above Deck Roof Components."
  - 3. NRCA: "The NRCA Roofing Manual" for construction details and recommendations.
- D. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
  - 1. Design Pressure: 90 PSF.
- E. Sheet Metal Standard for Copper: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- F. FM Approvals Listing: Manufacture and install copings, roof edge flashings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-90. Identify materials with name of fabricator and design approved by FM Approvals.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

# 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat surface.
  - 1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      - 1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - 2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
- C. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 or H01 temper.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hussey Copper Ltd.
    - b. Revere Copper Products, Inc.
  - 2. Finish: Nonpainted- Mill
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed; with smooth, flat surface.
  - 1. Basis of Design Product
  - 2. Finish: 4 (polished directional satin).
- E. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet according to ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coating designation, Grade 40 (Grade 275); prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
  - 1. Basis of Design Product
  - 2. Surface: Smooth, flat and with manufacturer's standard clear acrylic coating on both sides.
  - 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range, 70.
    - a. Match color selection for Division 07 Section "Standing Seam Sheet Metal Roofing" for sheet metal flashing and trim."
  - 5. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

# 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Laminated or reinforced, woven polyethylene or polypropylene, synthetic roofing underlayment; bitumen free; slip resistant; suitable for high temperatures over 220 deg F (111 deg C); and complying with physical requirements of ASTM D 226/D 226M for Type I and Type II felts.
- C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 mils (0.76 mm) thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer according to written recommendations of underlayment manufacturer.
- D. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C) or lower.

# 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal.
  - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factoryapplied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  - 2. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze or passivated Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 3. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 4. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 5. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) and Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
- C. Solder:
  - 1. For Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
  - 2. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.

- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.
- H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard and by FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams, Soldered: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- H. Seams for stainless steel and copper solder: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- I. Seams for Uncoated Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer.
- J. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

# 2.6 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Hanging Gutters: Refer to Specification Section 07 41 13 "Standing Seam Metal Roof Panels".
- B. Downspouts: Refer to Specification Section Section 07 41 13 "Standing Seam Metal Roof Panels".

- C. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers to dimensions required, with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch-(100-mm-) wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scupper. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27mm) thick.
  - 2. Finish: Match gutters and downspouts.
- D. Splash Pans: Fabricate to dimensions and shape required and from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.

# 2.7 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 12-foot- (3.6-m-) long sections. Furnish with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  - 1. Profile: As indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plate.
  - 3. Fabricate from the Following Materials:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
    - b. Finish: Match gutters and downspouts.
- B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 12-foot- (3.6-m-) long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, fasten and seal watertight. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  - 1. Coping Profiles: Fig A according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
  - 2. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plate.
  - 3. Fabricate from the Following Materials:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
    - b. Finish: Match gutters and downspouts.
- C. Roof and Roof-to-Wall Transition Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
  - 2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.
- D. Base Flashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft (0.55 mm thick).
- E. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
  - 2. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
  - 3. Galvanized Steel or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 24 gage/0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick, minimum.
- F. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
  - 2. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.

- 3. Galvanized Steel or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 24 gage/0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick, minimum.
- G. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
  - 2. Copper: 22 Mil/16 Ounce Copper (.0216 inch) 24 gauge.
- H. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Copper: 12 oz./sq. ft. (0.41 mm thick).

# 2.8 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tremco, TremLock Counterflashing.
- B. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, from the following exposed metal:
  - 1. Extruded Aluminum: 0.100 inch (2.54 mm) thick.
  - 2. Corners: Factory prefabricated.
  - 3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide reglets with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
  - 4. Masonry Type, Embedded: Provide reglets with offset top flange for embedment in cut masonry mortar joint.
- C. Counterflashings: Manufactured units of heights to overlap top edges of base flashings by 4 inches (100 mm) and in lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) designed to snap into reglets and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal:
  - 1. Extruded Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
- D. Accessories:
  - 1. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.
- E. Aluminum Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

# 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
- 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps and edges with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
- B. Apply slip sheet, wrinkle free, before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  - 1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
  - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
  - 3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  - 4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
  - 5. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
  - 6. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
  - Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
  - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets with solder to width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm); however, reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.
  - 1. Do not solder aluminum sheet.
  - 2. Do not use torches for soldering.
  - 3. Heat surfaces to receive solder, and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Copper Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated sheets, using solder for copper.
  - 5. Stainless-Steel Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated sheets, using solder for stainless steel and acid flux. Promptly remove acid flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.

#### 3.4 ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.
- B. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in elastomeric sealant compatible with the substrate.
- C. Parapet Scuppers: Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
  - 1. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal with elastomeric sealant to scupper.
  - 2. Seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.

## 3.5 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- C. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- D. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.

- E. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant, interlocking folded seam or blind rivets and sealant, anchor and washer at 36-inch (910-mm) centers unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

#### 3.6 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry."
- C. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry."
- D. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 8 inches (200 mm) beyond wall openings.

#### 3.7 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

#### 3.8 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

# 3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- E. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

#### END OF SECTION 07 62 00

# SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
    - 2. Urethane joint sealants.
    - 3. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
    - 4. Latex joint sealants.
  - B. Related Requirements:
    - 1. Section 32 13 73 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in paved roads, parking lots, walkways, and curbing.
- 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
  - A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide joints formed between two 6-inch- (150-mm-) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each kind of joint sealant, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Schedule: Include the following information for each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested:
  - 1. Joint-sealant location and designation.
  - 2. Manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Type of substrate material.
  - 4. Proposed test.
  - 5. Number of samples required.

- D. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
  - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
  - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation are needed for adhesion.
- E. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- F. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- G. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

# 1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
  - 1. Adhesion Testing: Use ASTM C 794 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
  - 2. Compatibility Testing: Use ASTM C 1087 to determine sealant compatibility when in contact with glazing and gasket materials.
  - 3. Stain Testing: Use ASTM C 1248 to determine stain potential of sealant when in contact with stone masonry substrates.
  - 4. Submit manufacturer's recommended number of pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, joint-sealant backings, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 5. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 6. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including use of specially formulated primers.
  - 7. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for adhesion to, staining of, and compatibility with joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
  - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
  - 4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
    - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1.1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.

- For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
- 5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
- 6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

# 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F(5 deg C).
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

# 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
  - 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS
  - A. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Pecora Corporation.
  - b. Sika Corporation Building Components.
  - c. The Dow Chemical Company.
  - d. Tremco Incorporated.

#### 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL .
    - b. PPG Paints; PPG Industries, Inc.; Top Gun 400 Elastomeric Acrylic Urethane Sealant, 1418 Series .
    - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Stampede-1.
    - d. Sika Corporation Building Components; Sikaflex®-201 T .

#### 2.4 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Pecora Corporation; Pecora 860 or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. PPG Paints; PPG Industries, Inc.; Top Gun 350 Acid Curing Silicone Sealant, 1419 Series.
    - b. Sika Corporation Building Components; Sikasil®-GP.
    - c. The Dow Chemical Company.
    - d. Tremco Incorporated.

# 2.5 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation.
    - b. PPG Paints; PPG Industries, Inc.
    - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
    - d. Tremco Incorporated.

#### 2.6 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
  - 1. <u>Manufacturers:</u> Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
    - a. Adfast.
    - b. Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.

- c. Master Builders Solutions.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) Type O (opencell material) Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

# 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with jointsealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Porcelain enamel.
    - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

# 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Provide flush joint profile at locations indicated on Drawings according to Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
  - 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated on Drawings according to Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
    - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

# 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
    - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet(300 m) of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.

- b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet(300 m) of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
- 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
  - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
- 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
  - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
  - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
  - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
- 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
- 5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

## 3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

# 3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

# 3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Joints between different materials listed above.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 50, T, NT.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors <insert color>.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:

- a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
- b. Joints between different materials listed above.
- c. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors windows and louvers.
- 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
- 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry walls.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors and windows.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
    - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

# SECTION 08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1. Elevations of each door type.
  - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
  - 6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
  - 7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  - 8. Details of accessories.
  - 9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
- C. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

# 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality control reports.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
  - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- (102-mm-) high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or equal:
  - 1. Ceco Door; AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY.
  - 2. Curries, AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY Group.
  - 3. Mesker Door; Mesker Openings Group.
  - 4. Republic Doors and Frames; an Allegion brand.

# 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.38 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. (2.16 W/K x sq. m) when tested according to ASTM C518.

#### 2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 2.
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm).
    - c. Guage: 18 gauge door.
    - d. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm).
    - e. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush Edge.
    - f. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
    - g. Core: Manufacturer's standard
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm).
    - b. Construction: Knock down.
    - c. All hollow metal frames receiving electronic hardware to have factory provided junction boxes with field installed conduit.
  - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

## 2.4 BORROWED LITES

- A. Fabricate of metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm).
- B. Construction: Full profile welded.
- C. Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as metal as frames.
- D. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.5 HOLLOW-METAL PANELS

- A. Provide hollow-metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as adjacent door assemblies.
- B. Provide reinforcement for surface mounted hardware.

# 2.6 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  - 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
  - Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches (610 mm) of frame height above 7 feet (2.1 m).
  - 3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.
- C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch (51-mm) height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.
- D. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z (12G) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

#### 2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.

- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."

# 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Door Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
  - 1. Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding.
  - 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
    - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
  - 4. Terminated Stops (Hospital Stops): Terminate stops 6 inches (152 mm) above finish floor with a 45 -degree angle cut, and close open end of stop with steel sheet closure. Cover opening in extension of frame with welded-steel filler plate, with welds ground smooth and flush with frame.
- C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
  - 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
  - 2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.

# 2.9 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
  - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.

- 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
  - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
  - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
- 2. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
  - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
- 3. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
- 4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
- 5. In-Place Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors.
- 6. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
  - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
  - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
  - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 NAAMM-HMMA 841 and NAAMM-HMMA guide specification indicated.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
  - A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
  - B. Inspections:
    - 1. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements according to NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
  - C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
  - D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

# 3.4 REPAIR

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- C. Factory-Finish Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with same material used for factory finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

# END OF SECTION 08 11 13

#### SECTION 08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE - ADDENDUM 03

#### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hardware for swinging Hollow Metal Door Openings.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 01 25 13 Product Substitution Procedures
  - 2. Section 06 20 00 Finish Carpentry
  - 3. Section 08 11 13 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Use the following references to properly detail, schedule, furnish and install finish hardware items.
  - 1. NFPA 80 Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives (2007)
  - 2. DHI Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware (1984)
  - 3. DHI Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule (1996)
  - 4. ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Door Controls Closers (2013)
  - 5. ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Bored and preassembled Locks and Latches (2011)
  - 6. ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Mortise Locks and Latches Series 1000 (2012)
  - 7. ANSI/BHMA A156.18 Materials and Finishes (2012)

# 1.4 SUBMITTALS

### A. Schedule:

- 1. Provide submittals in accordance with 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures.
- 2. Provide hardware schedule in vertical format on 8-1/2-inch by 11-inch paper or electronic format. Conform to DHI publication Sequence and Format for Hardware Schedule using Architect's door numbers and hardware set numbers.
- Provide elevation drawings for openings with electrical hardware and access control devices with each hardware schedule. Include illustration of opening, operational description, electrified hardware components, legend, approximate mounting location and size of enclosures, size and quantity of conductors, facility name and date.
- B. Product Data: Provide one set of manufacturer's catalog and technical data for each hardware item used, highlighting design, function, fasteners, accessories, and options to facilitate review with each hardware schedule submitted.
- C. Templates: Provide two sets of manufacturer's templating information for mortised and template hardware upon receipt of approved hardware schedule to the door and frame supplier(s). Include requirements for internal reinforcements required for surface mounted hardware.
- D. Wiring Diagrams:
  - 1. Three sets point-to-point diagrams specially developed for each opening that requires electrical hardware, with hardware delivery to jobsite. Reference elevation drawings submitted with hardware schedule using Architect's opening numbers.

- 2. Three sets riser diagrams for openings requiring power supplies or access control. Include placement of power supplies, distance of wire runs from power supply, cable quantity and number and gauges of wires.
- E. Keying Schedule: Arrange meeting with Owner, Architect and finish hardware supplier to determine keying requirements immediately upon receipt of finish hardware schedule.

# 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish operations and maintenance manual is accordance with Section 01 78 28 Operations and Maintenance Data and as follows:
  - 1. Furnish one copy of manual at date of Substantial Completion in a 2-1/2-inch thick binder labeled with project information, date and name and contact information for the hardware supplier.
  - 2. Include in manual:
    - a. Copy of approved hardware schedule, including door numbers and locations.
    - b. Copy of approved keying schedule.
    - c. Catalog data for each product.
    - d. As-installed "wiring diagrams" for each opening connected to power.
    - e. Parts list for locksets, exit devices, and door closers.
    - f. Installation templates and instructions.
    - g. Warranty information.
    - h. Name, address, and phone number of local representatives for each manufacturer.

# 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Materials:
  - 1. Screws and Fasteners: Two of each screw and fastener required for general maintenance of hinges, locks, closers, exit devices, and sealing systems.
  - 2. Deliver to Owner remaining finish hardware fasteners and special installation tools upon completion of Project.

# 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Supplier:
  - 1. Furnish hardware from recognized supplier who has warehousing facility within 100 miles of project location, and who has actively supplied hardware for similar projects in the vicinity for a minimum of five years.
  - 2. Supplier shall employ an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC), as certified by Door and Hardware Institute, on staff full time to administer and supervise project.
- B. Installer: Install hardware using installers who have actively installed commercial door hardware for a minimum of five years, and are familiar with hardware installation of type required on this Project.
- C. Pre-Installation Meeting:
  - 1. Prior to installation of hardware, arrange for manufacturer's representatives of locksets, door closers, and exit devices to hold a jobsite meeting to instruct the installing personnel on the proper installation of their products.
  - 2. Send a letter of compliance, indicating when this meeting was held, and who was in attendance, to the Architect and Owner.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Delivery:

MAROTTA / MAIN ARCHITECTS

- 1. Jointly check in hardware, upon delivery to jobsite, against approved hardware schedule with hardware supplier. Record shortage or damage and replace or repair as necessary.
- 2. Deliver hardware to be installed during fabrication of doors and frames, to manufacturer.

## B. Storage:

- 1. Store hardware in a secure, dry, temperature controlled room on shelving to protect against loss, theft and damage.
- 2. Store items too long for shelving on pallet, off the floor.
- C. Marking and Packaging:
  - 1. Deliver hardware to jobsite in manufacturer's original packaging marked to correspond with approved hardware schedule with Architect's door numbers and hardware sets.
  - 2. Mark all locksets, exit devices, cylinders, auxiliary hardware and key switches with keyset symbol.
  - 3. Replace any wet or damaged packaging with new.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Furnish warranties in accordance with Section 01 78 36 Warranties. Extended or limited warranties shall be as follows:
  - 1. Furnish minimum ten year factory warranty on door closers, against defects in material and workmanship, from date of substantial completion.

# PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. The following manufacturers' were used in the hardware sets.

| 1.  | Butt Hinges              | Stanley        | ST |
|-----|--------------------------|----------------|----|
| 2.  | Locks and Latchsets      | Best           | BE |
| 3.  | Cylinders and Cores      | Best           | BE |
| 4.  | Surface Closers          | Best           | BE |
| 5.  | Exit Devices             | PHI            | PR |
| 6.  | Overhead Stop/Holders    | ABH            | AB |
| 7.  | Door Pulls               | Trimco         | TR |
| 8.  | Flushbolts               | Trimco         | TR |
| 9.  | Protection Plates        | Trimco         | TR |
| 10. | Wall/Floor Stops         | Trimco         | TR |
| 11. | Thresholds and Gasketing | National Guard | NA |
| 12. | Silencers                | Trimco         | TR |

- B. Submit requests for substitution in accordance with Section 01 25 13 Product Substitution requirements and as follows:
  - Provide catalog data with product information highlighted or bubbled to facilitate review. Product must meet or exceed level or design intended and/or function established by specified products.

# 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Screws and Fasteners:
  - 1. Provide manufacturer's recommended fasteners of proper type, material and finish.
  - 2. Provide self-tapping screws for sweeps and stop applied weatherstripping.
  - 3. Utilize through-bolts for the attachment of door closers and exit devices on non-reinforced doors only. Finish: match door face.
  - 4. Exposed screw heads: phillips type.

# C. Hinges:

# 1. Type:

- a. Five-knuckle, full mortise, ball bearing.
- b. Furnish heavy weight hinges on heavy doors and doors expected to have high frequency use.

# 2. Quantity:

- a. One pair of hinges for all doors up to 5 feet high. Furnish one additional hinge for every 2'-6" in height or fraction thereof.
- 3. Size:
  - a. For 1-3/4-inch thick doors up to 3 feet wide: 4 ½-inches high
  - b. For 1-3/4-inch thick doors over 3 feet wide: 5-inches high
  - c. For all doors over 1-3/4-inches thick: 5-inches high
  - d. Size in width shall minimally clear door trim.

#### 4. Application:

- a. NRP (non-removable pin) at exterior doors and reverse bevel doors with locking hardware.
- b. Electric hinges: have sufficient number of concealed wires to accommodate electrical function of hardware. Furnish junction box and mortar shield.
- 5. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

| Туре            | Stanley | Hager  |
|-----------------|---------|--------|
| Standard Weight | FBB179  | BB1279 |
| Heavy Weight    | FBB168  | BB1168 |
| Heavy Weight    | FBB199  | BB1199 |

#### D. Door Bolts:

- 1. Flushbolts:
  - a. Automatic Flushbolts: One pair at fire rated doors, and occupied rooms required for egress.
  - b. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

| Bolt/Door Type  | Trimco | Burns | ABH  |
|-----------------|--------|-------|------|
| Automatic Metal | 3810   | 7842  | 1860 |

#### E. Locksets:

- 1. Cylindrical Locks:
  - a. Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Series 4000 Operational Grade 1.
  - b. Latchbolt with appropriate throw for fire rated doors and pairs of doors in accordance with manufacturers listing.
  - c. Lock functions as specified in hardware schedule.
  - d. Lever design: 15D
  - e. Backset: 2-3/4-inch
  - f. Strike single door: ANSI 4-7/8-inch with proper lip length to minimally clear trim.
  - g. Strike pair of doors: flat lip strike sized to fit flush with face of door.
  - h. Furnish wrought strike box.
  - i. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

| Best      |  |
|-----------|--|
| 9K Series |  |

- 2. Mortise Locks:
  - a. Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Series 1000 Operational Grade 1.
  - b. Latchbolt with appropriate throw for fire rated doors and pairs of doors in accordance with manufacturers listing.
  - c. Lock functions as specified in hardware schedule.
  - d. Electrical functions as specified in hardware schedule, 24VDC.
  - e. Lever design: 15H
  - f. Backset: 2-3/4-inch
  - g. Strike single door: ANSI 4-7/8-inch with proper lip length to minimally clear trim.
  - h. Strike pair of doors: flat lip strike sized to fit flush with face of door.
  - i. Furnish wrought strike box.
  - j. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

| Best       |  |
|------------|--|
| 45H Series |  |

- 3. Cylinders:
  - a. Provide mortise and rim cylinders and cores from same manufacturer as locksets, for all locksets, exit devices, cylinder dogging, key switches and auxiliary hardware.
  - b. Appropriate cam and blocking rings for proper installation
- F. Keys & Keying
  - 1. Cylinders: 7-pin, interchangeable core and keyed into a BEST factory registered Masterkey System or equal.
  - 2. Provide construction cores and keys during construction period. Construction control and operating keys and cores are not part of permanent keying system or furnished on same keyway (or key section) as permanent keying system.
  - 3. Permanent Keys and Cores: Prepare permanent cores and keys in accordance with keying schedule. Provide Masterkeys and other Security Keys.
  - 4. Furnish keys in the following quantities:
    - a. 4 each Masterkeys per new Masterkey set.
    - b. 2 each Change keys each keyed core.
    - c. 6 each Construction Masterkeys.
    - d. 2 each Construction Control keys.
    - e. 2 each Control keys.
  - 5. Install permanent cores in locksets.
  - 6. Return construction cores to Hardware Supplier.
- G. Exit Devices:
  - 1. UL-listed for fire at fire door assemblies, and UL listed for panic at non-rated door assemblies.
  - 2. Size exit devices to proper door width and height.
  - 3. Stainless Steel deadlocking <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> -inch throw latch bolt.
  - 4. LBR (less bottom rod) where scheduled to eliminate use of floor mounted strikes.
  - 5. Cylinders for exit devices with cylinder dogging or locking trim.
  - 6. Electrical functions as scheduled in sets. Provide power supply and power transfer from same manufacturer as electrified exit device.
  - 7. Strike: as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 8. Lever design: To match lockset trim.
  - 9. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

| Precision        | Von Duprin |
|------------------|------------|
| Apex 2000 Series | 98 Series  |

- H. Surface Door Closers:
  - 1. Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1.
  - 2. Heavy duty high silicon aluminum alloy or cast iron body closers.
  - 3. Furnish manufacturers recommended size, arms and configuration for door and frame application required.
  - 4. Furnish brackets, spacers, support shoes, and plates for complete and proper installation.
  - 5. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

| Best           | LCN           |
|----------------|---------------|
| EHD9000 Series | 4040XP Series |

- Ι. Overhead Door Stop:
  - 1. Provide overhead stop or overhead stop/holder for interior doors as specified. Provide overhead stop for interior doors and at any door that swings more than 140 degrees before striking a wall, open against equipment, casework, sidelights, and/or where conditions do not allow a wall stop or a floor stop presents a tripping hazard.
  - Where overhead holders are specified provide friction type at doors without a closer and positive type 2. at doors with a closer.
  - 3. Acceptable manufacturers:

| ABH         | Glynn Johnson |
|-------------|---------------|
| 9020 Series | 90 Series     |
| 1020 Series | 100 Series    |

#### J. Door Trim:

- 1. Provide push plates 6 inches wide x 16 inches high x 0.050 inch thick and beveled 4 edges. Where width of door stile prevents use of 6 inches wide plate, adjust width to fit.
- 2. Provide pull plates 4 inches wide x 16 inches high x 0.050 inch thick, beveled 4 edges, and prepped for pull. Where width of door stile prevents use of 4 inches wide plate, adjust width to fit.
- 3. Acceptable manufacturers:

| Туре       | Trimco  | Burns | Rockwood  |
|------------|---------|-------|-----------|
| Pull Plate | 1014-3B | 5421B | 126 x 70C |
| Push Plate | 1001-9  | 56    | 75E       |

- K. Protection Plates:
  - 1. Where bottom rail allows, furnish 10-inch high kick plates and 10-inch high mop plates.
  - 2. Material: 0.050-inch thick stainless steel plates with four beveled edges.
  - 3. Countersink screw heads at wood doors.
  - 4. Width: 2-inch less door width on stop (push) side and 1-inch less door width on face (pull) side.
  - 5. Acceptable manufacturer and types:

| Trimco | Burns | Rockwood |
|--------|-------|----------|
| K0050  | KP    | K1050    |

- L. Door Stops:
  - 1. Convex, cast, wall stops.
  - 2. Furnish fastener suitable for wall condition.

  - Provide wedge type stop for doors with push/pulls.
    Where wall stops are inappropriate provide universal dome type floor stops.
  - 5. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

| Туре       | Trimco | Burns | Rockwood |
|------------|--------|-------|----------|
| Wall Stop  | 1270CX | 560   | 400      |
| Wedge Stop | 1298   | 526   | 487      |
| Floor Stop | 1211   | 521   | 441H     |

#### M. Thresholds and Gasketing:

- 1. Thresholds:
  - a. Returned closed ends at openings where threshold extends beyond frame face.
  - b. Bumper threshold with silicone insert where scheduled.
  - c. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

| National Guard Zero | Reese |
|---------------------|-------|
|---------------------|-------|

# 2. Gasketing:

- a. Rigid jamb weatherstip with replaceable neoprene insert.
- b. Include self-adhesive two-sided tape in addition to manufacturer's standard fastener.
- c. Meeting-stile gasketing required at exterior pairs of doors and doors in smoke partitions.
- d. TPE adhesive fire/smoke gasketing at fire and smoke "S" labeled openings
- e. Door sweep with neoprene insert for exterior out-swing doors.
- f. Acceptable manufacturers:

|--|

- N. Silencers:
  - 1. Grey rubber silencers with injector tool.
  - 2. Three silencers at single doors and two silencers at pairs.
  - 3. Acceptable manufacturers and types:

| Trimco | Rockwood | Burns |
|--------|----------|-------|
| 1229A  | 608      | 500   |

# 2.3 KEY CONTROL

- A. Key cabinet: wall mounted with one hook for each lock or cylinder plus twenty extra hooks.
  - 1. One non-removable security tag and one snap-on link duplicate tag per hook.
  - 2. Furnish tools, instructions sheets and accessories required to complete installation.
  - 3. Owner/Owner's representative will place keys in cabinet and complete index card furnished with key system.
  - 4. Acceptable manufacturers:

|   | Lund | Telkee | MMF |
|---|------|--------|-----|
| 1 |      |        |     |

# 2.4 FINISHES

A. Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.18.

| 1. | Butt Hinges       | 630 | Stainless Steel                |
|----|-------------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| 2. | Locks and Latches | 626 | Satin Chrome                   |
| 3. | Door Closers      | 689 | Spray Painted Aluminum         |
| 4. | Pull Plates       | 630 | Satin Stainless Steel          |
| 5. | Protection Plates | 630 | Satin Stainless Steel          |
| 6. | Stops and Holders | 630 | Satin Stainless Steel          |
| 7. | Thresholds/Gasket | AL  | Anodized Mil Finished Aluminum |

# PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify doors and frames are plumb, square, level and true and free from defects that would prevent proper installation of finish hardware.
- B. Verify power is run to doors requiring electrified hardware.
- C. Wash down masonry walls and complete painting and staining of doors and frames prior to installation of hardware.
- D. Complete finish flooring at doorways.
- E. Correct conditions that inhibit a proper installation before continuing with work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hardware in compliance with the DHI publication, Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware.
- B. Drill and countersink items not factory prepared for fasteners.
- C. Mount closers on room-side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair-side of stairway doors. Use necessary arms, brackets, spacers and plates to accommodate auxiliary hardware and special applications.
- D. Install fire door assemblies to maintain clearances at door edge to frame and meeting edge of pairs of doors in compliance with NFPA 80, providing 1/8-inch clearance at the hinge edge, lock edge, head and between pairs. Provide maximum 3/4-inch undercut at door bottom. Where panic thresholds are used, undercut door to allow 1/8-inch clearance between door and threshold.
- E. Trim, cut, and notch thresholds and saddles neatly to minimally fit the profile of the door frame. Set thresholds in bed of mastic sealant, forming tight seal between threshold and surface to which set.
- F. Use only fasteners furnished by manufacturer for installation as recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Install blocking material for all wall mounted door stops at height appropriate to contact door trim.
- H. Install weather-strip prior to installation of door closers and exit devices. Do not cut or notch weatherstrip.
- I. Locate electric hinges at second hinge from bottom of frame.
- J. Termination of wiring: Ensure wiring is in place and is connected for proper operation of hardware.

#### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify doors open and close smoothly without rubbing or catching and have positive latching where scheduled. Verify fire rated doors are installed with clearances in compliance with NFPA 80.
- B. Test electrified hold open devices tied into fire alarm system to confirm release upon activation of fire alarm. Test electrified hardware and access control to verify systems operate as directed in mode of operation. Where hardware is found to be inoperable, repair or replace with new.

# 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Upon substantial completion, make final adjustments to door closers and other items of hardware after balance of heating and ventilating equipment to ensure doors close and latch properly.
- B. Clean and polish all exposed hardware surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedures.

- C. Clean or repair pencil or tool marks from adjacent surfaces damaged or soiled by work of this Section.
- D. Recycle cardboard boxes and paper products used in packaging and transport of finish hardware.

# 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Remove hardware prior to painting or finishing door and frame. Wrap or mask exposed hardware that cannot be removed until date of substantial completion to avoid exposure to paint, solvents, and abuse.
- B. Repair or replace hardware damaged during construction at least two weeks prior to date of substantial completion.

#### 3.6 SCHEDULES

- A. Should items of hardware not definitely specified be required for completion of the Work, furnish such items of type and quality comparable to adjacent hardware and appropriate for service required.
- B. Where items of hardware aren't definitely or correctly specified, are required for completion of the Work, a written statement of such omission, error, or other discrepancy to Architect, prior to date specified for receipt of bids for clarification by addendum; or, furnish such items in the type and quality established by this specification, and appropriate to the service intended.

# Manufacturer List

| Code | Name                    |
|------|-------------------------|
| AB   | ABH Manufacturing Inc.  |
| BE   | Best Access Systems     |
| BY   | By Related Section      |
| NA   | National Guard          |
| ST   | BEST Hinges and Sliding |
| TR   | Trimco                  |

Finish List

| Code  | Description           |
|-------|-----------------------|
| 26D   | Satin Chrome          |
| 626   | Satin Chromium Plated |
| 630   | Satin Stainless Steel |
| 689   | Aluminum Painted      |
| AL    | Aluminum              |
| GREY  | Grey                  |
| US32D | Stainless Steel, Dull |

# **Hardware Sets**

| S | <mark>Set #01 – Restroom</mark> |                                  |     |    |
|---|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----|----|
|   | Doors:                          |                                  |     |    |
| 3 | 3 Butt Hinge                    | FBB179 4.5" x 4.5"               | 26D | ST |
| 1 | 1 Privacy Set                   | 45H-0LT15H VIB                   | 626 | BE |
| 1 | 1 Closer                        | EHD9016 AF90 (REG MOUNT)         | AL  | BE |
| 1 | 1 Kick Plate                    | K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E-Heavy CSK | 630 | TR |
| 1 | 1 Mop Plate                     | KM050 10" x 1" LDW B4E-Heavy CSK | 630 | TR |
| 1 | 1 Wall Bumper                   | 1270CX                           | 626 | TR |
| 1 | 1 Gasketing                     | 2525 B @ Head & Jambs            |     | NA |

# Set #02 - Custodial

|   | Doors: 215        |                                  |      |    |
|---|-------------------|----------------------------------|------|----|
| 3 | Butt Hinge        | FBB179 4.5" x 4.5" NRP           | 26D  | ST |
| 1 | Classroom Lockset | 9K3-7R15D STD S3                 | 626  | BE |
| 1 | Closer            | EHD9016 AF90P (PA MOUNT)         | AL   | BE |
| 1 | Kick Plate        | K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E-Heavy CSK | 630  | TR |
| 1 | Wall Bumper       | 1270CX                           | 626  | TR |
| 3 | Silencer          | 1229A                            | GREY | TR |

# Set #03 - Office

|   | D0013.         |                      |     |    |
|---|----------------|----------------------|-----|----|
| 3 | Butt Hinge     | FBB179 4.5" x 4.5"   | 26D | ST |
| 1 | Office Lockset | 9K3-7AB15D STD S3    | 626 | BE |
| 1 | Wall Bumper    | 1270CV               | 626 | TR |
| 1 | Gasketing      | 5020C @ Head & Jambs |     | NA |

# Set #04 – Records

| 3 Butt Hinge FBB179 4.5" x 4.5 NRP" 2           | 26D ST  |
|---|---------|
| 1 Storeroom Lockset 9K3-7D15D STD S3            | 626 BE  |
| 1 Closer EHD9016 SDS                            | AL BE   |
| 1 Kick Plate K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E-Heavy CSK 6 | 630 TR  |
| 3 Silencer 1229A                                | GREY TR |

# Set #06- Attic Stock

| 1 | Privacy Set       | 45H-0LT15H VIB    | 626 | BE |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|-----|----|
| 1 | Storeroom Lockset | 9K3-7D15D STD S3  | 626 | BE |
| 2 | 2 Office Lockset  | 9K3-7AB15D STD S3 | 626 | BE |
| 1 | Exit Device       | 2103 X 4903A LD   | 630 | PR |
| 1 | Exit Device       | 2201 LBR LD       | 630 | PR |
| 2 | Electric Strike   | BES-F2164 x F2LM  |     | BE |
| 1 | Closer            | EHD9016 SDS       | AL  | BE |
| 1 | Closer            | EHD9016 AF90      | AL  | BE |
# SECTION 08 80 00 - GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
1. Interior borrowed lites.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

#### 1.5 PRE-CONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Pre-construction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glazing material type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
  - 1. Testing will not be required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
  - 2. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
  - 3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 4. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including the use of specially formulated primers.

### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturers of insulating-glass units with sputter-coated, low-e coatings, glass testing agency, and sealant testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass and glazing products, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for tinted glass, coated glass, and glazing sealants.
  - 1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- D. Pre-construction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- B. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- C. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- D. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain tinted float glass, coated float glass, laminated glass, and insulating glass from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
- E. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.
- F. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. GANA Publications: GANA's "Glazing Manual."
  - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- G. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing labeling is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Strength: Where float glass is indicated, provide Kind FT heat-treated float glass. Where heatstrengthened glass is indicated, provide Kind FT heat-treated float glass. Where fully tempered glass is indicated, provide Kind FT heat-treated float glass.
  - 1. All glazing shall be Kind FT, fully tempered float glass.
- B. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
  - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick.
  - 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
  - 3. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.
- C. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.

#### 2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
  - 2. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Guidelines for Sloped Glazing."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Strength: Heat-strengthened, provide fully tempered float glass.

# 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS

A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.4 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
  - 1. Compatibility: Provide glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  - 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS Class 50, Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, BASF Building systems; Omniseal 50, or equals by one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation;
    - b. GE Advanced Materials Silicones;
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 295.
    - d. Pecora Corporation;
    - e. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-641.
    - f. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; SikaSil-C995.
    - g. Tremco Incorporated

#### 2.5 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
  - 1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
  - 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
  - 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

# 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

# 2.7 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

### 2.8 MONOLITHIC-GLASS TYPES

- A. Glass Type: Clear fully tempered float glass.
  - 1. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
  - 2. Provide safety glazing labeling.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
  - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

# 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Adjust glazing channel dimensions as required by Project conditions during installation to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.

- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by pre-construction testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm).
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tape are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

### 3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

### 3.5 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

# 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

# END OF SECTION 08 80 00

# SECTION 09 22 16 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
  - 2. Suspension systems for interior ceilings and soffits.
  - 3. Grid suspension systems for gypsum board ceilings.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Notify manufacturer of damaged materials received prior to installation.
  - B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Minimum as required by the IBC.

#### 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated
  - 2. Protective Coating: Comply with ASTM C645; ASTM A653/A653M, G40 (Z120); or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance. Galvannealed products are unacceptable.
    - a. Coating demonstrates equivalent corrosion resistance with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Studs and Track:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
    - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
    - b. ClarkDietrich.
    - c. Marino\WARE
    - d. MBA Building Supplies.

- e. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
- f. Phillips Manufacturing Co.
- g. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company; Stone Group of Companies.
- h. Steel Construction Systems; Stone Group of Companies.
- i. The Mill Steel Co.
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
  - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
  - b. ClarkDietrich.
  - c. Marino\WARE.
  - d. MBA Building Supplies.
  - e. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
  - f. Phillips Manufacturing Co.
  - g. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company; Stone Group of Companies.
  - h. Steel Construction Systems; Stone Group of Companies.
  - i. The Mill Steel Co.
- 3. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch (0.836 mm).
- 4. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Typical throughout, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top track manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
- D. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0269 inch (0.683 mm).
- E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch (0.836 mm).
  - 2. Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- F. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
  - 1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- G. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22 mm), minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0179 inch (0.455 mm), and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

#### 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
  - 1. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 as appropriate for the substrate.
    - a. Uses: Securing hangers to structure.
    - b. Type: Torque-controlled, expansion anchor.
    - c. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941 (ASTM F1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.

- d. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 2 (A4) stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593 (ASTM F738M), and nuts, ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M).
- 2. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch (4.12 mm) in diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch (25 by 5 mm) by length indicated.
- E. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-steel thickness of 0.0538 inch (1.367 mm) and minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch (1.367-mm) uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-(13-mm-) wide flanges, 3/4 inch (19 mm) deep.
  - 2. Steel Studs and Tracks: ASTM C645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch (0.836 mm).
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645, 7/8 inch (22 mm) deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch (0.836 mm).
  - 4. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- G. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Armstrong Frameall Drywall grid or equal.

#### 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide the following:
  - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
  - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
  - 1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling tracks to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
  - 2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

# 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C754.
  - 1. Gypsum Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C841 that apply to framing installation.
  - 2. Portland Cement Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C1063 that apply to framing installation.
  - 3. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C844 that apply to framing installation.
  - 4. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

# 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.

- D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
  - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
  - 4. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- E. Direct Furring:
  - 1. Screw to wood framing.
  - 2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
- F. Z-Shaped Furring Members:
  - 1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
  - 2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
  - 3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches (305 mm) from corner and cut insulation to fit.
- G. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

# 3.5 INSTALLING CEILING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Hangers: 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c.
  - 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c.
  - 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.

- a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
- 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
- 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
- 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
- 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
- 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
- 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
- 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- E. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m) measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

# END OF SECTION 09 22 16

# SECTION 09 29 00 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior gypsum board.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 22 16 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
  - 2. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for Acoustical Joint Sealants

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Gypsum wallboard.
  - 2. Gypsum board, Type X.
  - 3. Gypsum ceiling board.
  - 4. Joint treatment materials.
  - 5. Sound-attenuation blankets.

# 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 FIELD CONDITIONS

- 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL
  - A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions.
    - c. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - e. PABCO Gypsum.
    - f. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
  - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - d. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company.
    - e. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Core: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X.

### 2.4 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound dryingtype, all-purpose compound high-build interior coating product designed for application by airless

sprayer and to be used instead of skim coat to produce Level 5 finish.

### 2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.

# D. SOUND ATTENUATION BLANKET INSULATION

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - b. Schuller International, Inc.
  - c. Johns Manville.
  - d. Owens Corning.
- Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- 3. Formaldehyde free.
- 4. Sound transmission as tested per ASTM E 90 / ASTM E 413: STC = 46 / 2" thickness of mineral fiber.
- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation."
- F. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 07 26 00 "Vapor Retarders."

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints

at corners of framed openings.

- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  - 1. Wallboard Type: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Type X: Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.
- 3.4 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD
  - A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly

remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

### END OF SECTION 09 29 00

### SECTION 09 51 13 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.
- B. Perimeter Trim.
- C. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches (150 mm) in size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. Acoustical Panel: Set of full-size 6-inch- (150-mm-) square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
  - 2. Exposed Suspension-System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 6-inch- (150-mm-) long Samples of each type, finish, and color.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
  - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.

- c. Speakers.
- d. Sprinklers.
- e. Access panels.
- 5. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system and anchor and fastener type, from ICC-ES.

### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Acoustical Panel: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace panels that fail within the warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Acoustical Panels: Sagging and warping
  - 2. Grid System: Rusting and manufacturer's defects
- B. Warranty Period:
  - 1. Acoustical panels: Ten (10) years from date of substantial completion.
  - 2. Grid: Ten (10) years from date of substantial completion.
  - 3. Acoustical panels and grid systems with HumiGuard Plus or HumiGuard Max performance supplied by one source manufacturer is Thirty (30) years from date of substantial completion.

### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Panel Ceilings: Full-size units equal to 2% of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 1 unopened carton.

#### 1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.
- 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

### 2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations:
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Suspension System: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Glass-Fiber-Based Panels: Made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- D. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches (400 mm) away from test surface according to ASTM E 795.
- E. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.
  - 1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.

# 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 3. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
- B. Acoustical Panel ACT 1: Classrooms, Offices, Corridors, Toilet Rooms, and as indicated on finish schedule.
  - 1. Manufacturer: Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Type: Ultima 1913 and 1910.

- a. Type IV, Form 2, Pattern E
- 3. Performance Characteristics:
  - a. Sound Control: Noise Reduction Coefficient: NRC of .75 in compliance with ASTM E84.
  - b. Sound Blocking: .35 CAC
- 4. Surface Burning:
  - a. Class A, per ASTM E 1264.
- 5. Light Resistance: Actual light reflectance shall be .90 according to ASTM E 1477.
- 6. Product Characteristics:
  - a. Size: 24-inch by 48-inch by  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch, 24-inch by 24-inch by  $\frac{3}{4}$ ".
  - b. Edge Detail: Square Lay-In
  - c. Substrate: Wet Formed Mineral Fiber
  - d. Surface: Factory applied latex paint.
  - e. Suspension System: Prelude 15/16-inch Exposed Tee grid systems.

# 2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.
  - 1. High-Humidity Finish: Comply with ASTM C 635/C 635M requirements for "Coating Classification for Severe Environment Performance" where high-humidity finishes are indicated.
- B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 or ASTM E 1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (0.005 mm) for Class SC 1 service condition.
    - b. Corrosion Protection: Stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Group 1 Alloy 304 or 316 for bolts; Alloy 304 or 316 for anchor.
    - c. Corrosion Protection: Components fabricated from nickel-copper-alloy rods complying with ASTM B 164 for UNS No. N04400 alloy.
  - 2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- C. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch-(2.69-mm-) diameter wire.
- D. Hanger Rods Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide; formed with 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) diameter bolts.

### 2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 3. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636/C 636M and seismic design requirements indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, counter splaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail

due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures. Cloud hangers shall attach to grid above or provide pin-hole through upper ceiling to attach to structure.

- 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
- 6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to castin-place hanger inserts, post installed mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
- 7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
- 8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
- 9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
- 10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.
- 11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-inplace or post installed anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
  - 1. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.6 m). Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  - 2. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
  - 1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
    - a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
  - 2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
  - 3. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
  - 4. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system members with box-shaped flanges, install panels with reveal surfaces in firm contact with suspension-system surfaces and panel faces flush with bottom face of runners.
  - 5. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
  - 6. Install hold-down clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
  - A. Acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# 3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspensionsystem members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09 51 13

# SECTION 09 65 13 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Resilient base.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 09 65 19 "Resilient Tile Flooring" for resilient floor tile.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated, in manufacturer's standard-size Samples but not less than 12 inches (300 mm) long, of each resilient product color, texture, and pattern required.
- D. Product Schedule: For resilient products.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than10 linear feet (3 linear m) for every 500 linear feet (150 linear m) or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (32 deg C).

# 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C), in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RESILIENT BASE

- A. Resilient Base:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Burke Mercer Flooring Products; Division of Burke Industries, Inc.
    - b. Endura Rubber Flooring; Division of Burke Industries, Inc.
    - c. Flexco, Inc.
    - d. Tarkett.
    - e. Mondo Rubber International, Inc.
    - f. Nora Rubber Flooring; Freudenberg Building Systems, Inc.
    - g. Roppe Corporation, USA.
- B. Resilient Base Standard: ASTM F 1861.
  - 1. Material Requirement: Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  - 2. Manufacturing Method: Group I (solid, homogeneous).
  - 3. Style: Cove (base with toe).
- C. Minimum Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
- D. Height: 4 inches (102 mm).
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Preformed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed or preformed.
- H. Finish: Matte.

I. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

# 2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), except that adhesive for rubber stair treads shall have a VOC content of 60 g/L or less.
  - 2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective liquid floor polish products as recommended by resilient stair tread manufacturer.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until they are same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
- D. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
- H. Job-Formed Corners:
  - 1. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, visible adhesive, and surface blemishes from resilient stair treads before applying liquid floor polish.
  - 1. Apply three coat(s).
- E. Cover resilient products until Substantial Completion.

### END OF SECTION 09 65 13

# SECTION 09 65 19 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

# PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Heavy duty resilient tile flooring.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 09 Section "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient base, reducer strips, and other accessories installed with resilient floor coverings.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
  - 1. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of floor tile indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each color and pattern of floor tile required.
- E. Product Schedule: For floor tile.
- F. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- G. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

# 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation indicated.
  - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by manufacturer for installation techniques required.
- B. ASTM F2170 Standard test method for determining relative humidity in concrete floor slabs.
- C. ASTM D2047 Standard test method for static coefficient of friction.
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

- E. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site 2 weeks prior to start of work.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to Resilient Tile Flooring including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Inspect and discuss condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
    - b. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - c. Review designs and patterns.
    - d. Review dust-control procedures.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (32 deg C). Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

### 1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of. Other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents.

Warranty Period: Fifteen (15) years commencing on date of substantial completion.

### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 80 deg F (29 deg C), in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

#### 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish 1 unopened box of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 RESILIENT FLOOR TILE LVT-1 THRU LVT-6
  - A. Basis-of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mannington Commercial Color Anchor Collection, Grove or Stride or equal.

- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F1700, Class III, Type B
- C. Wearing Surface: Quantum Guard Elite, 20mil, (0.51 mm)
- D. Overall Thickness: 0.098" (2.5 mm)
- E. Size: 6 by 36 inches (152 by 915 mm).
- F. Edge Treatment: Bevel or Unbevel
- G. Colors and Patterns: Selected from manufacturer's full range of colors; 1-6 colors/ patterns.

### 2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Use adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - a. VCT Adhesives: Not more than 50 g/L.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and as follows. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m) in 24 hours.
    - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75% relative humidity level measurement.

- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
- E. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

### 3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- C. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- D. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- E. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in finished floor areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- F. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

# 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products until Substantial Completion.

### END OF SECTION 09 65 19

# SECTION 09 67 23 - RESINOUS FLOORING (EPOXY)

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Epoxy resin decorative broadcast flake flooring system.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-In-Place Concrete".
  - 2. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed with epoxy.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product specified. Include manufacturer's technical data, installation instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for reach resinous flooring system indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: Of each resinous flooring system required, 6 inches square, applied by Installer for this Project to a rigid backing, in color, texture, and finish indicated. Where finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets showing the full range of variations expects.
- D. Product Schedule: Use designations indicated in the Resinous Flooring Schedule and room designations indicated on Drawings in product schedule.
- E. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with specified requirements.
- F. Material Test Reports: From a qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results of the resinous flooring's reaction to chemicals and other reagents and substantiating compliance with requirements.
- G. Material Certificates: In lieu of material test reports, when permitted by Architect, signed by manufacturers certifying that materials furnished comply with requirements.

# 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials including primers, resins, hardening agents, finish or sealing coats from a single manufacturer/installer (no subcontractors) with not less than ten years of successful experience in manufacturing and installing principal materials described in this section. Manufacturer/Installer shall have completed at least five projects of similar size and complexity.

- B. Pre-Installation Conference
  - 1. Arrange a meeting not less than thirty days prior to starting work.
  - 2. Attendance
    - a. General Contractor
    - b. Architect/Owner's Representative
    - c. Manufacturer/Installer
- C. Field Samples: On floor area selected by Architect, provide full-thickness resinous flooring system samples that are at least 48 inches square to demonstrate texture, color, thickness, chemical resistance, cleanability, and other features of each resinous flooring system required. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of in-place field samples.
  - 1. If field samples are unacceptable, make adjustments to comply with requirements and apply additional samples until field samples are approved.
  - 2. After field samples are approved, these surfaces will be used to evaluate resinous flooring.
  - 3. Obtain Architect's approval of field samples before applying resinous flooring.
  - 4. Final approval of colors will be from field samples, not samples submitted for verification.
- D. Fire Performance: Where indicated, provide materials and construction for resinous flooring identical to those whose fire performance has been determined per MIL-STD-1623, as specified in MIL-D-3134, by a testing and inspecting organization or by another means acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Testing Agency Qualifications: To qualify for acceptance, an independent testing agency must demonstrate to Architect's satisfaction, based on evaluation of agency-submitted criteria conforming to ASTM E 699, that it has the experience and capability to conduct satisfactorily the testing indicated without delaying the progress of the Work.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.
- B. Material shall be stored in a dry enclosed area, protected from exposure to moisture. Temperature of storage area shall be maintained between 60 and 85°F/16 and 30°C.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature (air temperature between 60°F (16°C) and 85°F (30°C), ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring installation.
- B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring installation.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application, unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.
- D. Surface Preparation: A minimum mechanical surface preparation is required. Metal shotblasting or similar methods may be used. Any other method must be approved by the architect and the material manufacturer.

# PART 2 – PRODUCTS (MAIN BUILDING)

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products:
  - 1. Key Resin Company, to match architect's sample color (EPX-1), or equal products by:
    - a. Dex-O-Tex;
    - b. Dur-A-Flex
    - c. Stonhard
    - d. Industrial Floor Corporation
    - e. Palma Inc.
    - f. Sherwin Williams

### 2.2 MATERIALS - EPXY

A. Decorative Broadcast Flake Epoxy Flooring System: Resinous floor surfacing system consisting of moisture vapor primer, full membrane, base coat with broadcast flake, and grout/top coat(s). Total System Thickness to be 100-125 mils.

| В. | PROPERTIES                    | TYPICAL RESULTS   | TEST METHOD         |
|----|-------------------------------|---|---------------------|
|    | 1. Compressive Strength       | 13,000 psi  | ASTM C-579          |
|    | 2. Tensile Strength           | 4,200 psi   | ASTM C-307          |
|    | 3. Flexural Strength          | 7,800 psi   | ASTM C-580          |
|    | 4. Bond Strength to Concrete  | 300-400 psi (100% concrete failure)                             | ASTM D-4541         |
|    | 5. Flammability               | Self Extinguishing  | ASTM D-635          |
|    | 6. Heat Resistance Limitation | 150° F to 180° F  |                     |
|    | 7. Hardness                   | 80-85   | ASTM D-2240 Shore D |
|    | 8. Indentation                | 0.010 no chipping, cracking or delamination                     | MIL D-24613         |
|    | 9. Coefficient of Friction    | >0.60 Standard Texture  | ASTM D-2047         |
|    | 10. Impact Resistance         | Withstands 16 ft-lbs without cracking delamination, or chipping | MIL D-3134          |
|    | 11. Abrasion Resistance       | 30-40 mg loss; CS-17 Wheel,<br>1,000 cycles                     | ASTM D-4060         |

- C. Patching and Fill Material: Resinous patch or fill material approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- D. Moisture Vapor Transmission Resistant Primer: Type recommended and supplied by manufacturer for substrate and resistant to moisture transmission rates up to 100% RH on the RH probe test.

Basis of Design: Key #635-MVT PLUS

E. Crack Suppression/Isolation Membrane: Type recommended and supplied by manufacturer, having minimum 120 percent elongation per ASTM D412. 100% coverage.

Basis of Design: Key #580

- F. Body Coats: 100% solids epoxy with self-leveling filler and broadcast 1/8" flake aggregates.
- F. Grout Coat(s): 100% solids, UV resistant epoxy
- G. Top Coat: High Solids urethane with added wear additive
Basis of Design: Key #467-HS

- H. Joint Sealant: Type recommended or produced by resinous flooring manufacturer for type of service and joint condition indicated.
- I. Slip resistance additive shall be included to create proper job condition matching approved sample.
- J. Architect shall be notified one (1) week prior to field mock-up being installed.
- K. Color: Custom mix with a maximum of five colors.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare and clean existing terrazzo substrate according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean, dry, and neutral substrate for resinous flooring application.
- B. Moisture Vapor Transmission: Perform Calcium Chloride test in conformance to ASTM F 1869 or insitu probe relative humidity test conforming to ASTM F 2170 to determine moisture vapor emission levels prior to application of any component of the flooring system. Do not install flooring over substrate with MVT emission levels in excess of 3 lbs. per 24 hour period over a 1000 square foot area or with a relative humidity in excess of 80%. Notify the architect immediately if MVT or RH readings exceed these levels.
- C. Resinous Flooring Materials: Mix components and prepare materials according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written recommendations. All expansion joints shall be honored through the finish flooring system.
- F. Prior to commencing work, the manufacturer, General Contractor, and Installer shall conduct a walkthrough to review and determine the methods of joint treatment; contractor shall submit proposed joint treatment methods to Architect for review and approval prior to installation.

#### 3.2 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
  - 1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate and optimum intercoat adhesion.
  - 2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
- B. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- C. Apply isolation membrane in manufacturer's recommended thickness.
- D. Apply epoxy body coat in thickness required to accept the broadcast flakes per manufacturer's instructions.

- 1. Broadcast aggregates and, after resin is cured, remove excess aggregates to provide surface texture indicated.
- E. Integral Cove Base: Apply cove base mix to wall surfaces at locations indicated. Round internal and external corners. Install cove base according to manufacturer's written instructions and details including taping, mixing, priming, troweling, sanding, and topcoating of cove base.
- F. Apply sealing or finish coat(s), including grout coat, if any, of type recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer to produce finish indicated. Apply in number of coats and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer.

# 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Core Sampling: At the direction of Architect and at locations designated by Architect, take 1 core sample per 1000 sq. ft. of resinous flooring, or portion of, to verify thickness. For each sample that fails to comply with requirements, take 2 additional samples. Repair damage caused by coring and correct deficiencies at no additional cost to Owner.
- B. Material Sampling: Owner may at any time and any number of times during flooring application require material samples for testing for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Engage an independent testing agency to take samples of materials being used. Material samples will be taken, identified and sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing agency will test samples for compliance with requirements, using applicable referenced testing procedures or, if not referenced, using testing procedures listed in manufacturer's Product Data.
  - 3. If test results show installed materials do not comply with specified requirements, pay for testing, remove noncomplying materials, prepare surfaces coated with unacceptable materials, and reapply flooring materials to comply with requirements.

# 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Protect Decorative Quartz Epoxy flooring from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer.

# END OF SECTION 09 67 23

### **SECTION 09 91 23 - INTERIOR PAINTING**

# PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 STIPULATIONS

A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of Contract", "Special Conditions" and "Division 01 – General Requirements" form a part of this section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

### 1.3 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint and encapsulation systems on the following interior substrates within the areas of construction:
  - 1. Concrete.
  - 2. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
  - 3. Steel.
  - 4. Galvanized metal.
  - 5. Gypsum board.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 05 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
  - 2. Division 06 Sections for shop priming carpentry with primers specified in this Section.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  - 2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.
- 1.5 QUALITY CONTROL
  - A. MPI Standards:
    - 1. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."

- 2. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and paint systems indicated.
- 3. Mockups: Provide 25 square foot area mock up for the concrete floor coating system (Basis-of-Design H&C Products) to confirm adhesion, slip resistance, and final appearance of the system installation.

# 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

# 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

# 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL

- A. Furnish extra materials from same product run that match products installed in unopened cans and identified with labels describing color and paint type.
  - 1. Interior Paint: Provide one gallon for each color and paint type.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Paint and Coatings Manufacturers: Basis-of-Design: Sherwin-Williams Company or subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 2. Duron, Inc.
  - 3. M.A.B. Paints
  - 4. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.

# 2.2 PAINT & COATINGS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another, and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. Chemical Components of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide products that comply with the following limits for VOC content, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24) and the following chemical restrictions; these requirements do not apply to primers or finishes that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:
  - 1. Flat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
  - 2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
  - 3. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing one or more benzene rings).

- 4. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:
  - a. Acrolein.
  - b. Acrylonitrile.
  - c. Antimony.
  - d. Benzene.
  - e. Butyl benzyl phthalate.
  - f. Cadmium.
  - g. Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.
  - h. Di-n-butyl phthalate.
  - i. Di-n-octyl phthalate.
  - j. 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
  - k. Diethyl phthalate.
  - I. Dimethyl phthalate.
  - m. Ethylbenzene.
  - n. Formaldehyde.
  - o. Hexavalent chromium.
  - p. Isophorone.
  - q. Lead.
  - r. Mercury.
  - s. Methyl ethyl ketone.
  - t. Methyl isobutyl ketone.
  - u. Methylene chloride.
  - v. Naphthalene.
  - w. Toluene (methylbenzene).
  - x. 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
  - y. Vinyl chloride.
- C. Colors: As selected by Professional from manufacturer's full range.

# 2.3 BLOCK FILLERS

- A. Interior/Exterior Acrylic Latex Block Filler: MPI #4.
- B. Epoxy Block Filler: MPI #116.
- 2.4 PRIMERS/SEALERS
  - A. Interior Latex Primer/Sealer: MPI #50.
  - B. Sealer Concrete Floors: MPI #99.
  - C. Bonding Primer: MPI #17.

# 2.5 METAL PRIMERS

- A. Alkyd Anticorrosive Metal Primer: MPI #79.
- B. Quick-Drying Alkyd Metal Primer: MPI #76.
- C. Rust-Inhibitive Primer (Water Based): MPI #107.
- D. Epoxy, High Build, Low Gloss: MPI #108.
- E. Waterborne Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #134.
- F. Quick-Drying Primer for Aluminum: MPI #95.
- G. Cleaner Etching: MPI #25.

### 24-BGC-01 Clubhouse Renovations Projects ARPA Community Facilities - Boys and Girls Club of Lancaster

# 2.6 ACRYLIC LATEX PAINTS

- A. Interior Acrylic Latex (Eggshell): MPI #144.
- B. Interior Acrylic Latex (Semigloss): MPI #147.
- C. Interior Acrylic Latex (Gloss): MPI #114.
- D. High Performance Architectural Latex: MPI #141.
- E. Interior and exterior Bonding Primer: MPI #17.
- 2.7 WATERBASED EPOXY
  - A. Pre-Catalyzed waterbased epoxy: MPI #153.

# 2.8 WATERBASED POLYEURETHANE

- A. Dry Erase Clear Gloss Coating (Gloss Level 5).
- 2.9 QUICK-DRYING ENAMELS
  - A. Quick-Drying Enamel (Semigloss): MPI #81 (Gloss Level 5).
- 2.10 ALUMINUM PAINT
  - A. Aluminum Paint: MPI #1.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - 2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
  - 3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
  - 1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

# 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

- 2. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove mildew before painting by washing with a solution of 1 part liquid household bleach and 3 parts of warm water. Apply the solution and scrub the mildewed area. Allow the solution to remain on the surface for 10 minutes. Rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow the surface to dry 48 hours before painting. Wear protective glasses or goggles, waterproof gloves, and protective clothing. Quickly wash off any of the mixture that comes in contact with your skin. Do not add detergents or ammonia to the bleach/water solution.
  - 2. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturers written instructions.
- E. Concrete Floor Substrate to receive decorative stain and clear coat system: New and existing concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Newly Poured Concrete Surfaces:
    - a. Concrete must be cured a minimum of 28 days.
    - b. Proper product selection, surface preparation, and application affect product system performance. Product system integrity and service life will be reduced because of improperly prepared surfaces. Selection of the proper method of surface preparation depends on the substrate, the environment, and the expected service life of the coating system.
    - c. The surface must be dry and in sound condition.
    - d. Concrete MUST be completely bare, clean, free of all sealers, grease, oil, paint, contaminants including but not limited to: curing compounds, form release agents, bond breakers, membrane forming products, etc.
    - e. Remove mildew before application by washing with a solution of 1 part liquid household bleach and 3 parts of warm water. Apply the solution and scrub the mildewed area. Allow the solution to remain on the surface for 10 minutes. Rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow the surface to dry 48 hours before painting. Do not add detergents or ammonia to the bleach/water solution.
    - f. The concrete should feel like 120-grit sandpaper. At that point, the pores should be open enough for this product to react properly with the substrate.
    - g. If any sealer exists it must be removed.
    - h. Also reference ASTM D-4259 Method A
      - a. Method "A" ---Power Tool Cleaning or Hand Tool Cleaning.
      - b. Use needle guns or power grinder, equipped with a suitable grinding stone of appropriate size and hardness, which will remove concrete, loose mortar, fins, projections, and surface contaminants. Hand tools may also be used.
    - i. Vacuum or blow down to remove dust and loose particles from surface (ref. ASTM D4258).
    - j. DO NOT acid etch the concrete during the preparation process prior to the reactive stain application as this will reduce the stain's ability to react with the concrete.
    - k. Test for moisture or dampness by taping the 4 edges of an 18 inch by 18 inch plastic sheet (4mils thick) on the bare surface sealing all of the edges. After a minimum of 16 hours, inspect for moisture, discoloration, or condensation on the concrete or the underside of the plastic. If moisture is present, the source must be located and the cause corrected prior to application.
    - I. For hard troweled surfaces, open surface of substrates by sanding with 80-grit sanding disk of black scrubbing pad. Test sanding in an inconspicuous location to assure that sand and aggregate are not exposed by excessive sanding.

- m. Test concrete to make sure it is absorbent. Apply water in no less than 15-20 areas covering the entire area to be stained; the water must darken the concrete on contact, if the water puddles or a bead on the surface then the concrete is not absorbent.
- 2. Previously Coated Surfaces:
  - a. Previously coated areas require more preparation than bare surfaces. All existing coatings and sealers MUST be removed prior to application of reactive concrete stain.
  - b. Coatings can be removed by chemical or mechanical methods.
  - c. SSPC-SP13/NACE 6 This standard gives requirements for surface preparation of concrete by mechanical, chemical or thermal methods prior to the application of bonded protective coating, (acid reactive) or lining systems. The requirements of this standard are applicable to all types of cementitious surfaces including cast-in-place concrete floors and walls, precast slabs, masonry walls and shotcrete surfaces. An acceptable prepared concrete surface should be free of contaminants, laitance, loosely adhering concrete and dust, and should provide a dry, sound, uniform substrate suitable for the application of protective coating or lining systems. For complete instructions, refer to Joint Surface Preparation Standard SSPC-SP13/NACE 6.
  - d. SSPC-SP 14/NACE 8 Industrial blast cleaning provides a greater degree of cleaning than brush blast off cleaning (SSPC/ NACE 4), but less than commercial blast cleaning (SSPC-SP 6/NACE 3). Industrial blast cleaning is used when the objective is to remove most of the mill scale, and rust, but when extra effort is required to every trace of these determined to be unwarranted. (This would include previously coated substrates.)
  - e. Allow surface to dry for a minimum of 24 hours prior to application.
  - f. Test concrete to make sure it is absorbent. Apply water in no less than 15-20 areas covering the entire area to be stained; the water must darken the concrete on contact. If the water puddles or a bead on the surface then the concrete is not absorbent. It may be necessary to repeat #2 or #3.
  - g. Multiple concrete pours on the same project may stain differently, as may multiple finishing patterns and techniques. These surfaces also may exhibit varying degrees reactivity, porosity and texture causing the project to have inconsistent sheen variations when the sealer is applied.
- F. Concrete Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove surface oxidation.
- J. Gypsum Board Substrates: Do not begin paint application until finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.
- 3.3 APPLICATION
  - A. Apply paints and coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
    - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
    - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.

- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Mechanical and Electrical Work: Paint items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Mechanical Work:
    - a. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - b. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - c. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - d. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - e. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
    - f. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
    - g. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
  - 2. Plumbing Work:
    - a. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - b. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - c. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - d. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - e. Equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
    - f. Plumbing equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
  - 3. Electrical Work:
    - a. Switchgear.
    - b. Panelboards.
    - c. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

# 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: The Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as deemed necessary during the period when paints are being applied:
  - 1. Engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  - 3. The Owner may direct the Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying-paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.
- 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
  - A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

### 24-BGC-01 Clubhouse Renovations Projects ARPA Community Facilities - Boys and Girls Club of Lancaster

- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Professional, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Vertical Surfaces:
  - 1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd resistant, waterbased, MPI #3, SW Loxon Concrete and Masonry Primer. .
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior latex eggshell, (Gloss Level 3), MPI #52. SW Pro Mar 200 Zero VOC.
- B. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
  - 1. Acrylic Floor Coating at Stairs (Existing concrete floors):
    - a. First Coat: 100% Acrylic Water-based Floor Coating, SW Armorseal TredPlex Primer
    - b. Top Coat:, SW Armorseal TreadPlex Finish
      - a. Include an Anti-Slip additive: H&C SharkGrip product
- C. CMU Substrates:
  - 1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4. SW Prep Rite Block Filler.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior latex, (Gloss Level 3), MPI #44 SW Pro Mar 200 Zero VOC Eg-Shel.
- D. Steel Substrates:
  - 1. Quick-Drying Enamel System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer, MPI #76.SW Protective & Marine Kem Bond HS Universal Alklyd Primer
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Quick-drying enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Light Industrial Coating, Interior, Waterbased, (Gloss Level 6), MPI #154, SW Pro Industrial Acrylic Gloss.
  - 2. Aluminum Paint System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer, MPI #79. Protective & Marine Kem Bond HS
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint, SW Bond-Plex Aluminum Coating.
    - c. Topcoat: SW Bond-Plex Aluminum Coating.
- E. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
  - 1. High Performance Architectural Latex System.
    - a. Prime Coat: Galvanized, water based MPI #134. Protective & Marine DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex interior, high performance architectural matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, gloss, (Gloss Level 6), MPI #114. Pro Industrial Acrylic Gloss Coating.
- F. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates:
  - 1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, Rust Inhibitive, water based, MPI #107, SW Pro Cryl Universal Metal Primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, (Gloss Level 5), MPI #141. SW Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi Gloss Coating.
- G. High-Performance Architectural Latex System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex, for interior wood, MPI #39. SW PrepRite ProBlock Latex Primer/Sealer
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #141. SW Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi Gloss Coating.
- H. Gypsum Board Substrates:
  - 1. High Performance Architectural Latex Over Latex Primer System:
    - a. Prime Coat for GWB: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50. Pro Mar 200 zero VOC Interior Latex Primer.
    - b. Prime Coat for Plaster: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #3. SW Loxon Concrete & Masonry Primer/Sealer.
    - c. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
    - d. Topcoat: Interior latex, high performance architectural (Gloss Level 3), MPI #44. SW Pro Mar 200 Zero VOC Eg-Shel.

END OF SECTION 09 91 23

# SECTION 10 14 23 - PANEL SIGNAGE

# PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Room-identification signs, and other accessible signage.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary Project identification signs and for temporary information and directional signs.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

# 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For panel signs.
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
  - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
  - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Room-Identification Signs: Full-size Sample.
  - 2. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
- E. Sign Schedule: Use same designations specified or indicated on Drawings or in a sign schedule.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

# 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer of products and installers who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS
  - A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
    - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Movements: For exterior signs, allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- B. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for signs.

# 2.2 SIGNS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ace Sign Systems, Inc.
  - 2. APCO Graphics, Inc.
  - 3. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
  - 4. Best Sign Systems Inc.
  - 5. Mohawk Sign Systems.
  - 6. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
  - 7. Bayuk Graphics.
  - 8. iSigns
  - 9. Graphics 22 Signs.
  - 10. Venus Architectural, LLC.
- B. Room-Identification Sign: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:

- 1. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Photopolymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated to acrylic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
  - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.18 mm).
  - b. Surface-Applied Graphics: Applied vinyl film.
  - c. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 2. Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with concealed anchors or adhesive.
- 3. Mounting on Glazing: Where codes or local inspector require sign to be mounted on glazing, provide back panel to conceal adhesive in matching finish.
- 4. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

### 2.3 PANEL-SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
- B. Vinyl Film: UV-resistant vinyl film of nominal thickness indicated, with pressure-sensitive, permanent adhesive on back; die cut to form characters or images as indicated and suitable for exterior applications.

### 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signage, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
  - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
  - 2. Inserts: Furnish inserts to be set by other trades into concrete or masonry work.
- B. Adhesives: As recommended by sign manufacturer and with a VOC content of 70 g/L or less for adhesives used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

# 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
  - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  - 2. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
  - 3. Internally brace signs for stability and for securing fasteners.
  - 4. Provide rebates, lugs, and brackets necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Shop- and Subsurface-Applied Vinyl: Align vinyl film in final position and apply to surface. Firmly press film from the middle outward to obtain good bond without blisters or fishmouths.

# 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### 24-BGC-01 Clubhouse Renovations Projects ARPA Community Facilities - Boys and Girls Club of Lancaster

C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of signage work.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Verify that anchor inserts are correctly sized and located to accommodate signs.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
  - 3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Room-Identification Signs and Other Accessible Signage: Install in locations on walls according to accessibility standards.
- C. Mounting Methods:
  - Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.

# 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.
- 3.4 ADA COMPLIANT ROOM PANEL SIGN SCHEDULE (Final room numbers will be provided by Owner at a later date.)
  - A. Typical Room Identification Signage: Provide and Install Room Signage outside each door opening.
    1. Sign Size: Not less than 6-inches by 6-inches, and as required to accommodate text size and length.
    - 2. Text Format: Room Designation and Room Number, (if any).

- B. Accessibility Signage, Restrooms, Accessible Route, Stairs, Elevator, Areas of Refuge, accessible entrances where not all entrances are accessible, location of accessible exits, each door to egress stairway and exit discharge, unisex toilet. Provide and Install Room Signage outside all accessible locations, and as required to meet the requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act – 1990 (ADA) and ANSI A117.1.
  - 1. Sign Size: Not less than 8-inches by 8-inches, and as required to accommodate text size and length.
  - 2. Text Format: Centered, Symbols and Room Designation.
  - 3. Symbols: 4-inch accessibility symbols and gender symbol (if applicable), with the verbal description placed directly below followed by Grade 2 Braille.
- C. Directional Signage: Provide directional signage indicating the route to the nearest like accessible element at the following locations: accessible unisex toilets, accessible entrance.

END OF SECTION 10 14 23

# SECTION 10 28 00 - TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

# PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Public-use washroom and private use bathroom accessories.
  - 2. Under-lavatory guards shall be provided by the Plumbing Contractor.
  - 3. Custodial accessories.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
  - 1. Construction details and dimensions.
  - 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
  - 3. Material and finish descriptions.
  - 4. Features that will be included for Project.
  - 5. Manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Samples: Full size, for each accessory item to verify design, operation, and finish requirements.
  - 1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.
- C. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
  - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
  - 2. Identify products using designations indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
  - A. Maintenance Data: For toilet and bath accessories to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.
  - B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 1.7 COORDINATION

### 24-BGC-01 Clubhouse Renovations Projects ARPA Community Facilities - Boys and Girls Club of Lancaster

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch (0.8-mm) minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16/B 16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch (0.9-mm) minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 (Z180) hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153/A, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.
- I. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

# 2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM AND PRIVATE-USE BATHROOMS ACCESSORIES

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. American Specialties, Inc.
  - 2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  - 3. Bradley Corporation.
- B. Grab Bar (T1):
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick B-6806 Series.
  - 2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
  - 3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) thick.
    - a. Finish: Smooth, No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.

- 4. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- 5. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Liquid Soap Dispenser (T4):
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick B-2111
  - 2. Description: Manual Top-Fill Soap Dispenser, 4 inch spout.
  - 3. Capacity: 34 fluid ounces.
  - 4. Vandal-resistant locking cover.
  - 5. Free-turning spout.
- D. Mirror Unit (T5):
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick B-165.
  - 2. Frame: Stainless-steel angle, 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) thick.
    - a. Corners: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 3. Hangers: Produce rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, using method indicated below.
    - a. One-piece, galvanized-steel, wall-hanger device with spring-action locking mechanism to hold mirror unit in position with no exposed screws or bolts.
    - b. Wall bracket of galvanized steel, equipped with concealed locking devices requiring a special tool to remove.
  - 4. Size: 18" wide by 36" high.
  - 5. Glass: 1/4" tempered
- E. Surface Mounted Paper Towel Dispenser (T6):
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick B-262
  - 2. Description: Surface Mounted Dispenser
  - 3. Paper Towel Capacity: 400 C-fold or 525-multifold paper towels
  - 4. Secured cabinet with full-length piano hinge & tumbler lock
- F. Toilet Tissue Dispenser (T2):
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick B-4288 Toilet Tissue Dispenser
  - 2. Description: Two-roll unit.
  - 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
  - 4. Capacity: up to 5 <sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>" diameter rolls.
  - 5. Material and Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 6. Lockset: Tumbler type.
- G. Surface Mounted Robe Hook (T7):
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick 7671.
- H. Sanitary-Napkin Disposal Unit (T3):
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick 270.
  - 2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
  - 3. Door or Cover: Self-closing, disposal-opening cover and hinged face panel with tumbler lockset.
  - 4. Receptacle: Removable.
  - 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

# 2.3 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
  - 2. Truebro by IPS Corporation.
- B. Underlavatory Guard:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Truebro Lav Shield.
  - 2. Description: Durable, single-piece construction conceals piping and drain assemblies. Product must be ADA compliant.
  - 3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

# 2.4 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
  - 2. American Specialties, Inc.
  - 3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  - 4. Bradley Corporation.
- B. Mop and Broom Holder:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick B-239.
  - 2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks and holders.
  - 3. Length: 34 inches (865 mm).
  - 4. Hooks: Four.
  - 5. Mop/Broom Holders: Three, spring-loaded, rubber, cam type holders.
  - 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, Type 304 finish (satin).
    - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 18 ga. thick stainless steel.
  - 7. Shelf Depth: Eight (8) inches.
  - 8. Provide at all utility sink locations.

### 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf (1112 N), when tested according to ASTM F 446.

# 24-BGC-01 Clubhouse Renovations Projects ARPA Community Facilities - Boys and Girls Club of Lancaster

# 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 10 28 00

# SECTION 12 36 61 - SOLID SURFACE PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:1. Solid-surface-material countertops.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Countertop material, 6 inches (150 mm) square.

### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

# 1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOLID-SURFACE-MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS AND PANELS

- A. Configuration: Provide countertops with the following front and backsplash style:
  - 1. Front: 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laminated bullnose.
- B. Countertops: 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick, solid surface material laminated to 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick particleboard with exposed edges built up with 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, solid surface material.

- C. Fabrication: Fabricate tops in one piece with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid-surface-material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
  - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide products that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.
- D. Adhesives: Adhesives shall not contain urea formaldehyde.
- E. Adhesives: Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ANSI SS1.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, or equal products by one of the following (substitutions from the basis-of-design listed on the finish drawings must offer similar color):
    - a. Avonite Surfaces.
    - b. E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company.
    - c. Formica.
    - d. Meganite Inc.
    - e. Wilsonart International.
  - 2. Type: Provide Standard Type or Veneer Type made from material complying with requirements for Standard Type, as indicated unless Special Purpose Type is indicated.
- 3. Colors and Patterns: Equal to Corian Group 2 price level, color to be selected by Owner. PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops and sills level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet (3 mm in 2.4 m).
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.

### 3.2 SPARE MATERIALS

A. Turn over, at the end of the project, solid surface material large enough to replace the largest panel.

### END OF SECTION 12 36 61

# SECTION 31 20 00 - EARTH MOVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, turf and grasses, and plants.
  - 2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
  - 3. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
  - 4. Subbase course for concrete walks, and pavements.
  - 5. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
  - 6. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
  - 7. Subsurface course for multi-use asphalt area
  - 8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for recording preexcavation and earth moving progress.
  - 2. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary controls, utilities, and support facilities; also for temporary site fencing if not in another Section.
  - 3. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.

# 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
  - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

- 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.
- 3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades including engineered/structural fill.
- H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. for bulk excavation or 3/4 cu. yd. for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:
  - 1. Excavation of Footings, Trenches, and Pits: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch- wide, maximum, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,700 lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,400 lbf with extra-long reach boom; measured according to SAE J-1179.
  - 2. Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 230-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 47,992-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket; measured according to SAE J-732.
- I. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- J. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- K. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.
- L. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

# 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:
  - 1. Geotextiles.
  - 2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
  - 3. Warning tapes.
- B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:
  - 1. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches.
  - 2. Warning Tape: 12 inches long; of each color.
- C. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:
  - 1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487.

#### 24-BGC-01 Clubhouse Renovations Projects ARPA Community Facilities - Boys and Girls Club of Lancaster

- 2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor).
- C. Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:
  - 1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill. It is assumed that on-site soils can be used for the intended purposes.
  - 2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 1557 for each borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill. It is assumed that on-site soils can be used for the intended purposes.
  - 3. Test reports on borrow material.
  - 4. Verification of suitability of each footing subgrade material, in accordance with specified requirements.
  - 5. Field test reports for in-place Soil Density Tests.
  - 6. One optimum moisture-maximum density curve for each type of satisfactory soil which may be used as fill.
  - 7. Field test report of actual unconfined compressive strength and/or results of Bearing Capacity Tests.
  - 8. Report of satisfactory proof-rolling and/or testing of natural subgrade.

# 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Blasting: Blasting will not be allowed on this project.
- B. Preexcavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

# 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Data in subsurface investigation reports was used for the basis of the design and is made available to the Contractor for information only. Conditions are not intended as representations or warranties of accuracy or continuity between soil borings/test pits. The Owner, Engineer or Architect will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data by the Contractor.
- B. Additional test borings and other exploratory operations may be performed by the Contractor, at the Contractor's option; however, no change in the Contract Sum will be authorized for such additional exploration.
- C. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards occupied areas of the site.
- E. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near occupied areas of the site.
- F. Existing Utilities: The Contractor shall call 800-242-1776 "One Call System" prior to performing excavation work.
  - Locate existing underground utilities in areas of excavation work prior to beginning excavation operations. Visibly mark or stake existing utilities for the duration of construction and renovations. If utilities are indicated to remain in place, provide adequate means of support and protection during earthwork operations.
  - Should uncharted, or incorrectly charted, piping or other utilities be encountered during excavation, consult utility owner immediately for directions. Cooperate with Owner and utility companies in keeping respective services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities to satisfaction of utility owner.

- 3. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others, during occupied hours, except when permitted in writing by Owner and then only after acceptable temporary utility services have been provided.
- 4. Provide minimum 48-hour notice to Owner and receive written notice to proceed before interrupting any utility.
- 5. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicted to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies for shutoff of services if lines are active.
- G. Use of Explosives: Use of explosives is NOT permitted unless approved by Owner and local authority.
- H. Protection of Persons and Property: Barricade open excavations occurring as part of this work and post with warning lights.
  - 1. Operate warning lights as recommended by authorities having jurisdiction. Traffic control for improvements along public roads shall be conducted in accordance with PennDOT Publication 213 and the requirements of the local authorities.
  - 2. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
  - 3. Perform excavation by hand within drip line of large trees to remain. Protect root systems from damage or dryout to the greatest extent possible. Maintain moist condition for root system and cover exposed roots with moistened burlap.
- I. Vertical Limits of Responsibility: Contractor is responsible for excavation to the required subgrade elevations (cut) and not more than 12 inches below existing grade (fill) for bulk excavation and subgrade of structures and bottom of pipe, conduit or footings for trench excavation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: All stone specified herein shall be natural stone. No slag permitted. Provide imported soil materials from one source only when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations. Contractor is responsible for site excess or shortage of fills.
- B. Topsoil: Fertile, friable, natural loam, surface soil, reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, brush, weeds and other litter and free of roots, stumps, stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension and other extraneous or toxic matter harmful to plant growth.
  - 1. Obtain topsoil from local sources or from areas having similar soil characteristics to that found at project site. Obtain topsoil only from naturally, well-drained sites where topsoil occurs in a depth of not less than four (4) inches; do not obtain from bogs or marshes.
- C. Drainage or Porous Fill: Evenly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone complying with AASHTO No. 57 (PennDOT 2B), with 100 percent passing 1-1/2 inch sieve and not more than 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve. Wash stone thoroughly.
- D. Subbase Material (Exterior Concrete Pavements Only): Evenly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone complying with AASHTO No. 57 (PennDOT 2B), with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2 inch sieve and not more than 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve. When stone is used as subbase for Portland cement concrete slabs or pavement, stone shall be washed thoroughly.
- E. Satisfactory (or Suitable) Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, SM and SC according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

1. Off-site borrow soils needed to complete earthwork operations at the site shall furthermore be free of durable rock fragments measuring over 4 inches in maximum dimension, and shall meet the requirements for

GC, GW, GP, GM, SP, SM and SC soil types according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups.

F. Unsatisfactory (or Unsuitable) Soils: Soil Classification Groups CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups.

1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.

- G. Backfill, Fill and Borrow Materials: Satisfactory soil materials reasonable free of clay (maximum 25 percent) and sand (maximum 18 percent) and completely free of rock or gravel larger than 2 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation and other deleterious matter. Material shall be capable of obtaining the specified moisture content and compaction requirements.
- H. Engineered Fill: 2A modified natural stone or other material approved by geotechnical engineer.
- I. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; AASHTO No. 8 aggregate at trench drains.
- J. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate, natural, or manufactured sand.
- K. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

# 2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
  - 1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
  - 2. Grab Tensile Strength: 157 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
  - 3. Sewn Seam Strength: 142 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
  - 4. Tear Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
  - 5. Puncture Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
  - 6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
  - 7. Permittivity: 0.5 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
  - 8. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.
- B. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
  - 1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
  - 2. Grab Tensile Strength: 247 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
  - 3. Sewn Seam Strength: 222 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
  - 4. Tear Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
  - 5. Puncture Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
  - 6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
  - 7. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
  - 8. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

# 2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL (Flowable fill)

A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting, controlled low-strength flowable concrete material with a minimum 1-year compressive strength of 100 psi and a maximum 1-year compressive strength of 200 psi.

# 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
  - 1. Red: Electric.
  - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
  - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  - 4. Blue: Water systems.
  - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations. Contractor shall include engineering and installation of any required shoring to perform the required construction.
- B. Preparation of subgrade: Remove existing vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface.
- C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section 31 10 00 "Site Clearing," during earthwork operations.
- D. Provide protective insulating materials to protect subgrade and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost. Remove temporary protection measures prior to placing subsequent materials.

#### 3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
  - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

# 3.3 EXPLOSIVES

A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

### 3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
  - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

- 2. Remove rock to lines and grades indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
  - a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
  - b. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
  - c. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
  - d. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
  - e. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
  - f. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and 24 inches wider than pipe.

### 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR CONCRETE RETAINING WALLS

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
  - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
  - 2. Excavation for Water Meter Pit, Fluid Cooler Pad, and other Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.
- B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
  - 1. Excavate by hand to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.

# 3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS, RAMPS, AND PAVEMENTS

A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

### 3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
  - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
  - 1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
  - 2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.

- 3. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
- 4. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.
- D. Trench Bottoms: Excavate trenches 4 inches deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe.
  - 1. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

# 3.8 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
  - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Architect.

# 3.9 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

# 3.10 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
  - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
  - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
  - 5. Removing trash and debris.
  - 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

#### 3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".
- D. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.

- E. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit.
  - 1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- F. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- G. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
- H. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.
- I. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

## 3.12 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
  - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
  - 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
  - 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
  - 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
  - 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

### 3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
  - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
  - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

# 3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor):
  - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 98 percent.

- 2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
- 3. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
- 4. For utility trenches outside of building area, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 95 percent.
- 5. For utility trenches within building area, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 98 percent.

# 3.15 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.

# 3.16 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
  - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.
- B. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches thick. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
  - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.
  - 2. Place and compact impervious fill over drainage backfill in 6-inch- thick compacted layers to final subgrade.

# 3.17 SUBBASE COURSE UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

- A. Place subbase course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course under pavements and walks as follows:
  - 1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
  - 2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - 3. Shape subbase course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
  - 4. Place subbase course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
  - 5. Place subbase course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.

- 6. Compact subbase course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor).
- C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor).

# 3.18 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
  - 1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
  - 2. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
  - 3. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
  - 4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor).

# 3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Determine that fill material and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
  - 3. Determine, at the required frequency, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
  - 4. Determine that trench backfilling and any "Controlled Low-Strength Material" meets the project requirements.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
- E. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
  - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
  - 2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.
  - 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.

F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

### 3.20 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
  - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
  - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

# 3.21 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

# END OF SECTION 31 20 00

# **SECTION 32 12 16 - ASPHALT PAVING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cold milling of existing asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 3. Hot-mix asphalt overlay.
  - 4. Asphalt surface treatments.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, fill material, unbound-aggregate subbase and base courses, and aggregate pavement shoulders.
  - 2. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at pavement terminations.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
    - b. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.

# 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

1. Submit for approval product data, test reports from a PA DOT certified supplier.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Material Certificates: For each paving material. Include statement that mixes containing recycled materials will perform equal to mixes produced from all new materials.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each paving material, by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with PA DOT Publication 408 latest edition for asphalt paving work.

### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
  - 1. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
  - 2. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
  - 3. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D 3910.
  - 4. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
  - 5. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
- B. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D 692/D 692M, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.
- C. Fine Aggregate: AASHTO M 29, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof.
  - 1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.
- D. Choker Course: AASHTO No. 57 (clean)
- E. Mineral Filler: AASHTO M 17, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material.

# 2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO MP 1
- B. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D 3381 for viscosity-graded material
- C. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977, emulsified asphalt or ASTM D 2397, cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application. Required on existing asphalt surfaces and new binder.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141/D 3141M; pumping consistency.

### 2.3 MIXES

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes per PADOT Publication 408 specifications from a PADOT certified supplier (furnish PADOT approved mix design for each bituminous course):

- 1. Wearing Course: Superpave Asphalt Mixture Design, as noted on the drawings
- 2. Base Course: Superpave Asphalt Mixture Design, as noted on the drawings
- 3. Subbase Course 2A Modified Stone, as noted on the drawings

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
  - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
  - 2. Proof-roll subbase using heavy, pneumatic-tired rollers to locate areas that are unstable or that require further compaction.
  - 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- C. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 COLD MILLING

- A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
  - 1. Mill to a depth of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches, width of joint to be 12 inches.
  - 2. Mill to a uniform finished surface free of excessive gouges, grooves, and ridges.
  - 3. Control rate of milling to prevent tearing of existing asphalt course.
  - 4. Repair or replace curbs, manholes, and other construction damaged during cold milling.
  - 5. Excavate and trim unbound-aggregate base course, if encountered, and keep material separate from milled hot-mix asphalt.
  - 6. Patch surface depressions deeper than 1 inch after milling, before wearing course is laid.
  - 7. Handle milled asphalt material according to approved waste management plan required in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
  - 8. Keep milled pavement surface free of loose material and dust.
  - 9. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

### 3.3 PATCHING

- A. Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseat concrete pieces firmly.
  - 1. Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slab until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseat pieces firmly.
  - 2. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.

- C. Tack Coat: Before placing patch material, apply tack coat uniformly to vertical asphalt surfaces abutting the patch. Apply at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- D. Placing Patch Material: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

### 3.4 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
  - 1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
  - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
  - 3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

### 3.5 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
- B. Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.10 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd. per inch depth. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
  - 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
  - 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

#### 3.6 PLACING HOT-MIX ASPHALT

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand in areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
  - 1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
  - 2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
  - 3. Spread mix at a minimum temperature of 250 deg F.

- 4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
- 5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
  - 1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Overlap mix placement about 1 to 1-1/2 inches from strip to strip to ensure proper compaction of mix along longitudinal joints.
  - 2. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

## 3.7 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
  - 1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
  - 2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
  - 3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
  - 4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method according to AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."
  - 5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
  - 6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

#### 3.8 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
  - 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
  - 1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 6927 or AASHTO T 245, but not less than 94 percent or greater than 100 percent.
  - 2. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent or greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.

- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
  - 1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
  - 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

## 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to AASHTO T 168.
  - Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
  - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
    - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than three cores taken.
    - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
- E. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

## 3.11 WASTE HANDLING

A. General: Handle asphalt-paving waste according to approved waste management plan required in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

END OF SECTION 32 12 16

## SECTION 32 13 13 - CONCRETE PAVING

### PART 1 GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:
  - 1. Sidewalks.
  - 2. Exterior concrete pads.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 03, Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general applications of concrete, including ramps and steps.
  - 2. Division 31, Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, grading, and subbase course.
  - 3. Division 32, Section 32 13 73 "Concrete Pavement Joint Sealants" for joints within concrete pavement and at isolation joints of concrete pavement with adjacent construction.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag (GGBFS), and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.
- B. Design Mixes: For each concrete pavement mix. Include alternate mix designs when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following materials complies with requirements:
  - 1. Cementitious materials and aggregates.
  - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
  - 3. Admixtures.
  - 4. Curing compounds.
  - 5. Bonding agent or adhesive.
  - 6. Joint fillers.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed pavement work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant and each aggregate from one source.
- E. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by the requirements of the Contract Documents.

# PART 2 PRODUCTS

## 2.1 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
  - 1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves of a radius 100 feet or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

# 2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Steel Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.
- C. Epoxy-Coated, Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, deformed.
- D. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcement bars, welded wire fabric, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete or fiber-reinforced concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:
  - 1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.

# 2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. General: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:

- 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II. Supplement with the following:
  - a. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
- 2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag cement.
- B. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
- C. Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, from a single source, with coarse aggregate as follows:
  1. Class: 4S.
  - 2. Maximum Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
  - 3. Do not use fine or coarse aggregates containing substances that cause spalling.
- D. Water: ASTM C 94.

## 2.4 ADMIXTURES

- A. General: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cement and to be compatible with other admixtures.
- B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- C. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
- D. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
- E. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E.
- F. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.

## 2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- B. Water: Potable.
- C. Clear Solvent-Borne Liquid-Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, and non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

## 2.7 CONCRETE MIXES

- A. Prepare design mixes, proportioned according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
- B. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs for the trial batch method.

- 1. Do not use Owner's field quality-control testing agency as the independent testing agency.
- D. Cementitious Materials: Provide composite mix of Portland Cement and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag or Blended Hydraulic Cement and reduce percentage, by weight, of Portland Cement (ASTM C150) relative to total cementitious material weight for each design mix to at least 40 percent less than standard regional concrete mix designs.

Limit percentage, by weight, of standard Portland cement (C-150), to the following maximum percentages of the cementitious portion of the mix while maintaining the above 40% required reduction in Portland cement across the project's total quantity of concrete:

- 1. Exterior Concrete 65 percent except as noted in paragraph E below.
- E. Cementitious Materials for Exterior Concrete: For concrete exposed to deicers, limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than Portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
  - 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
  - 3. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - 4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent Portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
  - 5. Silica Fume: 10 percent.
  - 6. Combined Fly Ash, Pozzolans, and Silica Fume: 35 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
  - 7. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolans, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag, and Silica Fume: 50 percent Portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
- F. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows within a tolerance of plus or minus 1.5 percent:
  - 1. Air Content: 6.0 percent for 1-inch maximum aggregate.

# 2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Comply with requirements and with ASTM C 94.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface to check for unstable areas and verify need for additional compaction. Proceed with pavement only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.
- B. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.
- C. Preparation work, including finish grading (rough grade should be within 1/10 of finish grade), setting forms, and furnishing and installing of reinforcing steel shall also be done by the Contractor.

# 3.2 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

## 3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating reinforcement and with recommendations in CRSI's "Placing Reinforcing Bars" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Where indicated on plans install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

## 3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install concrete joints in sidewalks at 5'-0" on center in both directions, unless otherwise indicated. Install perpendicular to curbs or building walls.
  - 2. Verify exact joint placement with the Architect prior to installation.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour, unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
  - 1. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  - 3. Install construction joints at a maximum of 20'-0" on center.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
  - 1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
  - 3. Terminate joint filler less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
  - 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
  - 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.

- 6. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with groover tool to the following radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces. Provide 1/4-inch radius.
- E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to the following radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces. Provide 1/4-inch radius.

## 3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcement steel, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at the time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at the required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with requirements and with recommendations in ACI 304R for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping. Use equipment and procedures to consolidate concrete according to recommendations in ACI 309R.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- H. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading dry-shake surface treatments.
- I. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

- 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
- 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
- 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators, unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.
- J. Hot-Weather Placement: Place concrete according to recommendations in ACI 305R and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
  - Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement below 90 deg F. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Cover reinforcement steel with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  - 3. Fog-spray forms, reinforcement steel, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

# 3.6 GENERAL CONCRETE FINISHING

- A. General: Wetting of concrete surfaces during screeding, initial floating, or finishing operations is prohibited.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and the concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
  - 1. Light Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic; at ramps and similar sloped surfaces to provide a uniform, finline texture.

## 3.7 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and follow recommendations in ACI 305R for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Begin curing after finishing concrete, but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- D. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
  - 1. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and

sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

2. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.8 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
  - 1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot-long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
  - 4. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
  - 5. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
  - 6. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspection agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit test reports during concrete placement according to requirements specified in this Article.
- B. Testing Services: Contractor shall prepare samples for testing to be performed according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Sampling Fresh Concrete: Representative samples of fresh concrete shall be obtained according to ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94.
  - Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each compressive-strength test, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each type of concrete. Additional tests will be required when concrete consistency changes.
  - 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each compressive-strength test, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each type of air-entrained concrete.
  - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.
  - 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31; one set of four standard cylinders for each compressivestrength test, unless otherwise indicated. Cylinders shall be molded and stored for laboratory-cured test specimens unless field-cured test specimens are required.
  - 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each day's pour of each concrete class exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. One specimen shall be tested at 7 days and two specimens at 28 days; one specimen shall be retained in reserve for later testing if required.
  - 7. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for a given class of concrete, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - 8. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, current operations shall be evaluated and corrective procedures shall be provided for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  - 9. Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of three consecutive compressive-strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength and no individual compressive-strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.

- C. Test results will be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 24 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing agency, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in pavement, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- D. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as the sole basis for approval or rejection.
- E. Additional Tests: Testing agency shall make additional tests of the concrete when test results indicate slump, air entrainment, concrete strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42, or by other methods as directed.

# 3.10 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective, or does not meet requirements in this Section.
- B. Drill test cores where directed by Architect when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with Portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13

## SECTION 32 13 73 - CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cold-applied joint sealants.
  - 2. Hot-applied joint sealants.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 32 12 16 "Asphalt Paving" for constructing joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Section 32 13 13 "Concrete Paving" for constructing joints in concrete pavement.

## 1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, Samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
  - 1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
  - 2. Submit no fewer than eight pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, jointsealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
  - 5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint-preparation data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for compatibility with and adhesion to joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- wide joints formed between two 6-inch- long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Pavement-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for joint sealants.
- D. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From joint-sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
  - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility with and adhesion to joint sealants.
  - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

# 2.2 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 5893, Type NS.
  - 1. <u>Products</u>: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. <u>Crafco Inc.</u>, an ERGON company; RoadSaver Silicone.
    - b. <u>Dow Corning Corporation;</u> 888.
    - c. <u>Pecora Corporation;</u> 301 NS.
- B. Single-Component, Self-Leveling, Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 5893, Type SL.
  - 1. <u>Products</u>: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. <u>Crafco Inc.</u>, an ERGON company; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
    - b. <u>Dow Corning Corporation;</u> 890-SL.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 300 SL.
- C. Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
  - 1. <u>Products</u>: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. <u>Pecora Corporation;</u> Urexpan NR-200.

# 2.3 HOT-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 3406.
  - 1. <u>Products</u>: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. <u>Crafco Inc.</u>, an ERGON company; Superseal 402/117.
- B. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: ASTM D 6690, Types I, II, and III.
  - 1. <u>Products</u>: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Meadows, W. R., Inc.;Sealtight Hi-Spec.
    - b. Right Pointe; D-3405 Hot Applied Sealant.

## 2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control joint-sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

D. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control joint-sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.

### 2.5 PRIMERS

A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Joint-Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install joint-sealant backings of kind indicated to support joint sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint-sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint-sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent joint-sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install joint sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place joint sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

- E. Tooling of Nonsag Joint Sealants: Immediately after joint-sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to the following requirements to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint:
  - 1. Remove excess joint sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess joint sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses, by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants, during and after curing period, from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations in repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

### 3.6 PAVEMENT-JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints within cement concrete pavement.
  - 1. Joint Location:
    - a. Expansion and isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete pavement.
    - b. Contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - c. Other joints as indicated.
  - 2. Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: Single component, self-leveling.
  - 3. Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: Multicomponent, pourable, traffic-grade.
  - 4. Hot-Applied Joint Sealant for Concrete: Single component.
  - 5. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.
  - 1. Joint Location:
    - a. Joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
    - b. Joints between concrete curbs and asphalt pavement.
    - c. Other joints as indicated.
  - 2. Hot-Applied Joint Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single component.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

# END OF SECTION 32 13 73

# SECTION 32 31 13 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

# PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes galvanized (zinc) coated chain link fabric and swing gates including steel framework and accessories.

### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM A392 Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fabric
- B. ASTM A817 Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Steel Wire for Chain Link Fence Fabric and Marcelled Tension Wire
- C. ASTM A824 Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Steel Marcelled Tension Wire for Use With Chain Link
- D. ASTM F567 Standard Practice for Installation of Chain Link Fence
- E. ASTM F626 Standard Specification for Fence Fittings
- F. ASTM F900 Standard Specification for Industrial and Commercial Swing Gates
- G. ASTM F1043 Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Chain Link Fence Framework
- H. ASTM F1083 Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design chain-link fences and gates, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Chain-link fence and gate framework shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Company having manufacturing facilities in the United States with a minimum 5 years experience specializing in manufacturing of chain link fence products.
- B. Fence contractor: Contractor having 5 years experience installing similar projects in accordance with ASTM F567.
- C. Single source: To ensure system integrity obtain the chain link system, framework, fabric, fittings, gates and accessories from a single source.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each zinc-coated product and for each color and texture specified, in 6-inch (150-mm) lengths for components and on full-sized units for accessories.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For chain-link fences and gate framework indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of chain-link fence and gate, from manufacturer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For framing strength according to ASTM F 1043.
- C. Sample of special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Twelve (12) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design Criteria: The Contract Documents indicate the requirements of the Chain Link Fencing and are based on the specific products as indicated and as manufactured by MASTER HALCO CORPORATION. Chain Link Fencing by the available manufacturers indicated below may be considered, provided there are no deviations in quality, textures, coverage, gloss, solids by weight, viscosity, and other requirements indicated herein, implied or inherent in the basis of design product as solely by the Engineer. The burden of proof of equality is on the proposer. Engineer's approval does not relieve an available manufacturer from their responsibility of meeting the standards and requirements set forth in the specifications, and by the basis of design product.
- B. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers whose products may be considered to be incorporated in the Work shall include the following:
  - 1. Master Halco Corporation

- 2. Merchants Metals
- 3. Or Approved Equal

## 2.2 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

- A. General: Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist. Comply with CLFMI Product Manual and with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Fabric Height: As indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Steel Wire Fabric: Galvanized 9 gauge wire.
    - a. Mesh Size: 1 1/2 inches.
    - b. Zinc-Coated Fabric: ASTM A 392, Type II, Class 2, 2.0 oz./sq. ft. (610 g/sq. m) with zinc coating by the hot-dip process applied after fabrication.
  - 3. Selvage: Knuckled at both top and bottom selvages.
  - 4. Privacy Slats: Slats to be manufactured from a combination of color pigments, quality high density virgin polyethylene, and ultraviolet inhibitors, having a 25-year limited warranty against either color fading or breakage of slats and lock-channel used under normal climactic extremes. Color to be selected from manufacturers standard colors.

## 2.3 STEEL FENCE FRAMING

- A. Posts and Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043 for framing, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts. Provide members with minimum dimensions and wall thickness according to ASTM F 1043 based on the following:
  - 1. Fence Height: As indicated on drawings.
- B. Heavy Industrial Strength: Material Group IA, round steel pipe, Schedule 40. Hot-dip galvanized pipe having a zinc coating of 1.8 oz/ft<sup>2</sup> (550 g/m<sup>2</sup>) on the outside surface and 1.8 oz/ft<sup>2</sup> (550 g/m<sup>2</sup>) on the inside surface.
  - 1. Horizontal Framework Members: top and bottom rails complying with ASTM F 1043.
  - 2. Brace Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043.
- C. Pipe Line Post:
  - 1. Outside Diameter: 2.875 inches (73 mm)
  - 2. Wall Thickness: 0.203 inches (5.16 mm)
  - 3. Weight: 5.79 lb/ft (8.62 kg/m)
- D. Pipe End and Corner Post:
  - 1. Outside Diameter: 2.875 inches (73 mm)
  - 2. Wall Thickness: 0.226 inches (5.74 mm)
  - 3. Weight: 9.11 lb/ft (13.56 kg/m)
- E. Pipe Rail and Braces:
  - 1. Outside Diameter: 1.660 inches (42.2 mm)
  - 2. Wall Thickness: 0.140 inches (3.56 mm)
  - 3. Weight: 2.27 lb/ft (3.38 kg/m)

## 2.4 FITTINGS

- A. Post caps: ASTM F626 galvanized pressed steel, malleable iron, or aluminum alloy weather tight closure cap for tubular posts. Provide one cap for each post. "C" shaped line post without top rail do not require post caps. When top rail is specified provide line post loop tops to secure top rail.
- B. Rail ends: Galvanized pressed steel per ASTM F626, for connection of rails to post using a brace band.
- C. Top rail sleeves: 7" (178 mm) galvanized steel sleeve per ASTM F626. [If expansion and contraction of the rail is of concern add a 0.137" (3.48 mm) wire diameter by 1.80" (45.72 mm) long expansion spring between the adjourning rails]
- D. Wire ties: 9 gauge (0.148") (3.76 mm) galvanized steel wire for attachment of fabric to line posts and rails. Pre-formed hog ring ties to be 9 gauge (0.148") (3.76 mm) galvanized steel or aluminum for attachment of fabric to tension wire. Tie wire and hog rings per ASTM F626.
- E. Brace and tension (stretcher bar) bands: ASTM F626 galvanized 12 gauge (0.105") (2.67mm) pressed steel by 3/4" (19mm) formed to a minimum 300 degree profile curvature for post attachment. Secure bands using minimum 5/16" (7.94 mm) galvanized carriage bolt and nut.
- F. Tension (stretcher) bars: Galvanized steel one piece length equal to 2 inches (50 mm) less than full height of fabric with a minimum cross-section of 3/16" x 3/4" (4.76 mm x 19 mm) per ASTM F626. Provide tension (stretcher) bars where chain link fabric is secured to the terminal post.
- G. Truss rod assembly: Galvanized steel minimum 5/16" (7.9mm) diameter truss rod with pressed steel tightener, in accordance with ASTM F626
- H. Carriage bolts and nuts: Galvanized of commercial quality

## 2.5 TENSION WIRE

- A. ASTM A824 Type II, zinc coated (galvanized) steel wire, 7 gauge, (0.177") (4.50 mm) diameter wire having a tensile strength of 75,000 psi (517 MPa).
  - 1. Type II, zinc coated with minimum coating weight matching chain-link fabric coating weight.
  - 2. Class 5: 2.00 oz/ft<sup>2</sup> (610 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### 2.6 SWING GATES

- A. Swing gates as indicated. Fabricate chain link swing gates in accordance with ASTM F900. Gate frame to be of welded construction. Weld areas to be protected with zinc-rich paint per ASTM A780. The gate frame members are to be spaced no greater than 8' 0" (2.44 m) apart horizontally or vertically. Exterior members to be 1.900" (48.3 mm) OD pipe, interior members when required shall be 1.660" (42.2 mm) OD pipe. Pipe to be Grade 1 ASTM F1083 per section 2.2. Chain link fabric to match specification of fence system. Fabric to be stretched tightly and secured to vertical outer frame members using tension bar and tension bands spaced 12" (304.8 mm) on center and tied to the horizontal and interior members 12" (304.8 mm) on center using 9 gauge galvanized steel ties per section 2.3.
- B. Hinges, hot dip galvanized pressed steel or malleable iron, structurally capable of supporting gate leaf and allow opening and closing without binding. Non-lift-off type hinge design shall permit gate to swing 180° (3.14 rad)
- C. Latch: Galvanized forked type capable of retaining gate in closed position and have provision for padlock. Latch shall permit operation from either side of gate.

#### 24-BGC-01 Clubhouse Renovations Projects ARPA Community Facilities - Boys and Girls Club of Lancaster

- D. Double gates: Provide galvanized drop rod with center gate stop pipe or receiver to secure inactive leaf in the closed position. Provide galvanized pressed steel locking latch, requiring one padlock for locking both gate leaves, accessible from either side.
- E. Gate holdback: Provide galvanized gate hold back keeper for each gate leaf over 5 feet (1524 mm) wide. Gate keeper shall consist of mechanical device for securing free end of gate when in full open position.
- F. Gate posts: Grade 1 pipe ASTM F1083 per section 2.2.

| T. Outside Diameter is based on table below for indicated gate widths. |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| Gate Leaf Width  | Outside Diameter       |
| Up to 6 feet (1.8m)  | 2.875 inches (73.0 mm) |
| Over 6 feet to 12 feet (1.8 to 3.7 m)                                  | 4.0 inches (101.6 mm)  |

Outside Diameter is based on table below for indicated gate widths

## 2.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Concrete: Minimum 28 day compressive strength of 3,000 psi (20 MPa).

# GATE CONSTRUCTION DETAILS:

E. Gate Frame:

1

1. The gate frame shall be fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum alloy extrusions. The top member shall be a 3" x 5" (76mm x 127mm) aluminum structural channel/tube extrusion weighing not less than 3.0 lb/lf (4.4kg/m). To maintain structural integrity this frame member shall be "keyed" to interlock with the "keyed" track member. If fabricated as a single horizontal piece, the bottom member shall be a 2" x 5" (51mm x 127mm) aluminum structural tube weighing not less than 2.0 lb/lf (2.9kg/m). If fabricated in two horizontal pieces, the bottom member shall be a 5" (127mm) aluminum structural channel weighing not less than 2.6 lb/lf (3.8kg/m). When the gate frame is manufactured in two horizontal pieces or sections, they shall be spliced in the field (the gate frame shall be fabricated in one or multiple sections depending on size requirements or project constraints).

- F. Vertical Members (Chain Link):
  - The vertical members at the ends of the gate frame shall be "P" shaped in cross section with a nominal base dimension of no less than 2" x 2" (51mm x 51mm) and weighing not less than 1.6 lb/lf (2.3kg/m). Major 2" x 2" (51mm x 51mm) vertical members weighing not less than 1.1 lb/lf shall separate each bay and shall be spaced at less than gate height intervals.
  - 2. Intermediate 1" x 2" (25mm x 51mm) vertical members weighing not less than .82 lb/lf shall alternate between 2" x 2" major members.
- G. Gate Track:
  - The gate frame shall have a separate semi-enclosed "keyed" track, extruded from 6005AT61 or 6105-T5 aluminum alloy, weighing not less than 2.9 lb/lf (4.2kg/m). The track member is to be located on only one side of the top primary. Welds to be placed alternately along the top and side of the track at 9" (229mm) centers with welds being a minimum of 2" (51mm).
- H. All welds on the gate frame shall conform to Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record to insure conformance to the AWS D1.2 Structural Welding Code. All individual welders shall be certified to AWS D1.2 welding code. See 1.02 D.
- I. Gate Mounting:
  - 1. The gate frame is to be supported from the track by two (2) swivel type, self-aligning, 4-wheeled, sealed lubricant, ball-bearing truck assemblies.

- The bottom of each support post shall have a bracket equipped with a pair of 3" (76mm) UHMW guide wheels Wheel cover protectors shall be included with bottom guides to comply with UL325.
- 3. Gap protectors shall be provided and installed, compliant with ASTM F 2200-05.
- J. Diagonal Bracing:
  - 1. Diagonal "X" bracing of 3/16" or 1/4" diameter stainless or galvanized steel cable shall be installed throughout the entire gate frame.
- K. The gate shall be completed by installation of approved filler as specified.
  - 1. Chain Link: 2" x 2" x 9 gauge aluminized steel chain link fabric shall extend the entire length of the gate (if operated gate, counterbalance must also have fabric to prevent reach through and comply with ASTM F2200, see 1.03 C.1) Fabric shall be attached at each end of the gate frame by standard fence industry tension bars and tied at each 2" x 2" (51mm x 51mm) vertical member with standard fence industry ties. ASTM F2200 requires attachment method that leaves no leading or bottom edge protrusions (cannot exceed 0.5 inch).

## POSTS:

L. A single set of support posts shall be minimum 4" O.D. (102mm) round SS40 or 4" x 4" x 3/16" wall square steel tubing, grade 500. Gate posts shall be galvanized or coated and supported in concrete footings as specified by the design team.

# FINISH:

- M. Gate to be mill finish aluminum or color coated with polyester powder as specified. If powder coated, the gate (including track member) and all accessories shall be pretreated chemically by sand blasting or other acceptable method to ensure proper coating adherence.
- N. The truck assembly shall be warranted against manufacturing defects by the manufacturer for a period of (5) five years from date of sale.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 SITE EXAMINATION

- A. Ensure property lines and legal boundaries of work are clearly established.
- B. Survey of fence location to be provided by general contractor.
- C. Verify areas to receive fencing are completed to final grade.

## 3.2 CHAIN LINK FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Install chain link fence system in accordance with ASTM F567 and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Locate terminal post at each fence termination and change in horizontal or vertical direction of 30° or more.
- C. Concrete set posts: Excavate holes in firm, undisturbed or compacted soil. Holes shall have diameter 4 times greater than outside dimension of post, and depths approximately 6" (152 mm) deeper than post bottom. Excavate deeper as required for adequate support in soft and loose soils, and for posts with heavy lateral loads. Set post bottom 36" (914 mm) below surface when in firm, undisturbed soil. Place concrete around posts in a continuous pour. Trowel finish around post and slope to direct water away from posts.
- D. Check each post for vertical and top alignment, and maintain in position during placement and finishing operations.
- E. Bracing: Install horizontal brace and truss assembly at mid-height for fences 6' (1829 mm) and over at each fabric connection to the terminal post. The diagonal truss rod is installed at the point where the brace rail is

attached to the terminal post and diagonally down to the bottom of the adjacent line post. Place the truss rod in tension by adjusting the turnbuckle.

- F. Tension wire: Install tension wires so that it will be located 4" (101.6 m) up from bottom the fabric. If top rail is not specified, install the tension wire so that it will be located 4" (101.6 mm) down from the top of the fabric. Stretch and install tension wire before installing the chain link fabric and attach it to each post using wire ties.
- G. Top rail: Install in lengths of 21' (6400 mm). Connect ends with sleeves forming a rigid connection, allow for expansion and contraction.
- H. Center Rails: Install mid rails between line posts and attach to post using rail end or line rail clamps.
- I. Bottom Rails: Install bottom rails between posts and attach to post using rail end or line rail clamps.

# 3.3 CHAIN LINK FABRIC INSTALLATION

- A. Fabric: Install fabric on security side, pull fabric taut; thread the tension bar through fabric and attach to terminal posts with tension bands spaced maximum of 15" (381 mm) on center and attach so that fabric remains in tension after pulling force is released. Install fabric so that it is 2" (50 mm) +/- 1" (25 mm) above finish grade.
- B. Secure fabric using wire ties to line posts at 15" (381 mm) on center and to rails and braces 24" (610 mm) on center, and to the tension wire using hog rings 24" (610 mm) on center. Tie wire shall be secured to the fabric by wrapping it two 360 degree turns around the chain link wire pickets. Cut off any excess wire and bend back so as not to protrude so as to avoid injury if a pedestrian may come in contact with the fence.

### 3.4 CHAIN LINK GATE INSTALLATION

A. Swing gates: Installation of swing gates and gate posts shall be per ASTM F567. Direction of swing shall as shown on drawings. Gates shall be hung plumb in the closed position with minimal space from grade to bottom of gate leaf. Double gate drop bar receiver shall be set in a minimum concrete footing 6" (152 mm) diameter by 24" (610 mm) deep. Gate leaf holdbacks shall be installed on all double gates and all gate leafs greater than 5' (1524 mm) in width.

#### 3.5 SITE CLEAN-UP

A. Clean up area adjacent to fence line from debris and unused material created by fence installation.

# END OF SECTION 32 31 13